# GE Fanuc Automation 

## Computer Numerical Control Products

Series 0i-Model C Series Oi Mate-Model C Connection Manual (Hardware)

## Warnings, Cautions, and Notes as Used in this Publication

## Warning

Warning notices are used in this publication to emphasize that hazardous voltages, currents, temperatures, or other conditions that could cause personal injury exist in this equipment or may be associated with its use.

In situations where inattention could cause either personal injury or damage to equipment, a Warning notice is used.

## Caution

Caution notices are used where equipment might be damaged if care is not taken.

## Note

Notes merely call attention to information that is especially significant to understanding and operating the equipment.

This document is based on information available at the time of its publication. While efforts have been made to be accurate, the information contained herein does not purport to cover all details or variations in hardware or software, nor to provide for every possible contingency in connection with installation, operation, or maintenance. Features may be described herein which are not present in all hardware and software systems. GE Fanuc Automation assumes no obligation of notice to holders of this document with respect to changes subsequently made.

GE Fanuc Automation makes no representation or warranty, expressed, implied, or statutory with respect to, and assumes no responsibility for the accuracy, completeness, sufficiency, or usefulness of the information contained herein. No warranties of merchantability or fitness for purpose shall apply.

## DEFINITION OF WARNING, CAUTION, AND NOTE

This manual includes safety precautions for protecting the user and preventing damage to the machine. Precautions are classified into Warning and Caution according to their bearing on safety. Also, supplementary information is described as a Note. Read the Warning, Caution, and Note thoroughly before attempting to use the machine.

## WARNING

Applied when there is a danger of the user being injured or when there is a danger of both the user being injured and the equipment being damaged if the approved procedure is not observed.

## CAUTION

Applied when there is a danger of the equipment being damaged, if the approved procedure is not observed.

## NOTE

The Note is used to indicate supplementary information other than Warning and Caution.

[^0]
## PREFACE

This manual describes the electrical and structural specifications required for connecting the FANUC Series $0 i / 0 i$ Mate CNC control unit to a machine tool. The manual outlines the components commonly used for FANUC CNC control units, as shown in the configuration diagram in Chapter 2, and supplies additional information on using these components with the Series $0 i / 0 i$ Mate. Refer to individual manuals for the detailed specifications of each model.

## Applicable models

The models covered by this manual, and their abbreviations are:

| Product name | Abbreviation |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| FANUC Series $0 i-\mathrm{TC}$ | $0 i-\mathrm{TC}$ | Series $0 i$ |
| FANUC Series $0 i-\mathrm{MC}$ | $0 i-\mathrm{MC}$ |  |
| FANUC Series $0 i-\mathrm{PC}$ | Series $0 i$ Mate |  |
| FANUC Series $0 i$ Mate-TC |  | $0 i$ Mate-MC |

Configuration of the This manual consists of Chapters 1 to 13 and Appendixes. manual

| Chapter title | Description |
| :---: | :---: |
| Chapter 1 CONFIGURATION | Outlines connections for the Series $0 i / 0 i$ Mate and guides the reader concerning additional details. |
| Chapter 2 <br> TOTAL CONNECTION DIAGRAM | This chapter shows the total connection diagram. |
| Chapter 3 INSTALLATION | This chapter describes the installation conditions for the Series 0i/0i Mate. <br> 1) Required power supply <br> 2) Heat generated <br> 3) Connector arrangement on the control unit <br> 4) Noise prevention |
| Chapter 4 CONNECTING THE POWER SUPPLY | This chapter describes how to connect the power supply. |
| Chapter 5 CONNECTING PERIPHERAL UNITS | This chapter describes how to connect the following peripheral devices: <br> 1) MDI units <br> 2) I/O devices (via RS232C) <br> 3) Manual pulse generators |
| Chapter 6 CONNECTING THE SPINDLE UNIT | This chapter describes how to connect the spindle servo unit, the spindle motor. |
| Chapter 7 <br> SERVO INTERFACE | This chapter describes how to connect the servo unit and the servo unit. |
| Chapter 8 CONNECTION TO FANUC I/O Link | This chapter describes the use of FANUC I/O Link to expand the machine interface I/O. |
| Chapter 9 CONNECTION OF I/O Link SLAVE DEVICES | This chapter describes the addresses and connector pins for signals transferred between the Series 0i/Oi Mate and the machine. Describes the I/O unit for Series 0i. |
| Chapter 10 <br> EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL | This chapter describes the handling of emergency stop signals. The user must read this chapter before attempting to operate the CNC. |
| Chapter 11 <br> HIGH-SPEED SERIAL BUS (HSSB) | This chapter describes the high-speed serial bus (HSSB) supported by the Series 0 i. |
| Chapter 12 <br> FANUC DNC2 | This chapter describes connections for the FANUC DNC2. |
| Chapter 13 <br> OTHER NETWORK CONNECTION | This chapter lists manuals related to the Ethernet, DeviceNet, and other networks |
| Appendix | A External dimensions of unit <br> B 20-pin interface connectors and cables <br> C Connection cable (Supplied from US) <br> D Optical fiber cable <br> E Liquid crystal display (LCD) <br> F Memory card interface <br> G Procedure for fixing the memory card |

Related manuals of Series Oi-C/Oi Mate-C

The following table lists the manuals related to Series $0 i-\mathrm{C}$, Series $0 i$ Mate-C.
This manual is indicated by an asterisk(*).

| Manual name | Specification number |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| FANUC Series $0 i-M O D E L C / 0 i$ Mate-MODEL C DESCRIPTIONS | B-64112EN |  |
| FANUC Series 0i-MODEL C/0i Mate-MODEL C CONNECTION MANUAL (HARDWARE) | B-64113EN | * |
| FANUC Series 0i-MODEL C/0i Mate-MODEL C CONNECTION MANUAL (FUNCTION) | B-64113EN-1 |  |
| FANUC Series 0i-PC CONNECTION MANUAL (FUNCTION) | B-64153EN |  |
| FANUC Series 0i-TC OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-64114EN |  |
| FANUC Series 0i-MC OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-64124EN |  |
| FANUC Series $0 i$ Mate-TC OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-64134EN |  |
| FANUC Series 0i Mate-MC OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-64144EN |  |
| FANUC Series 0i-PC OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-64154EN |  |
| FANUC Series $0 i-M O D E L$ C/0i Mate-MODEL C MAINTENANCE MANUAL | B-64115EN |  |
| FANUC Series 0i-MODEL C/0i Mate-MODEL C PARAMETER MANUAL | B-64120EN |  |
| FANUC Series 0i-PC PARAMETER MANUAL | B-64160EN |  |
| PROGRAMMING MANUAL |  |  |
| Macro Compiler/Macro Executor PROGRAMMING MANUAL | B-61803E-1 |  |
| FANUC MACRO COMPILER (For Personal Computer) PROGRAMMING MANUAL | B-66102E |  |
| PMC |  |  |
| PMC Ladder Language PROGRAMMING MANUAL | B-61863E |  |
| PMC C Language PROGRAMMING MANUA | B-61863E-1 |  |
| Network |  |  |
| PROFIBUS-DP Board OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-62924EN |  |
| Ethernet Board/DATA SERVER Board OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-63354EN |  |
| AST Ethernet Board/FAST DATA SERVER OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-63644EN |  |
| DeviceNet Board OPERATOR'S MANUAL | B-63404EN |  |


| Manual name | Specification <br> number |  |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: |
| OPEN CNC | B-62994EN |  |  |
| FANUC OPEN CNC OPERATOR'S MANUAL <br> Basic Operation Package 1 (For Windows 95/NT) | B-63214EN |  |  |
| FANUC OPEN CNC OPERATOR'S MANUAL <br> (DNC Operation Management Package) |  |  |  |

Related manuals of SERVO MOTOR $\alpha i s / \alpha i / \beta i s$ series

The following table lists the manuals related to SERVO MOTOR $\alpha i s / \alpha i / \beta i s$ series

| Manual name | Specification <br> number |
| :--- | :--- |
| FANUC AC SERVO MOTOR $\alpha i s / \alpha i$ series <br> DESCRIPTIONS | B-65262EN |
| FANUC AC SERVO MOTOR $\beta i$ s series <br> DESCRIPTIONS | B-65302EN |
| FANUC AC SERVO MOTOR $\alpha i s / \alpha i / \beta i s ~ s e r i e s ~$ <br> PARAMETER MANUAL | B-65270EN |
| FANUC AC SPINDLE MOTOR $\alpha i$ series <br> DESCRIPTIONS | B-65272EN |
| FANUC AC SPINDLE MOTOR $\beta i$ s series <br> DESCRIPTIONS | B-65312EN |
| FANUC AC SPINDLE MOTOR $\alpha i / \beta i$ series <br> PARAMETER MANUAL | B-65270EN |
| FANUC SERVO AMPLIFIER $\alpha i$ series <br> DESCRIPTIONS | B-65282EN |
| FANUC SERVO AMPLIFIER $\beta i$ series <br> DESCRIPTIONS | B-65322EN |
| FANUC AC SERVO MOTOR $\alpha i s / \alpha i$ series <br> FANUC AC SPINDLE MOTOR $\alpha i$ series <br> FANUC SERVO AMPLIFIER $\alpha i$ series <br> MAINTENANCE MANUAL | B-65325EN |
| FANUC AC SERVO MOTOR $\beta i$ s series <br> FANUC AC SPINDLE MOTOR $\beta i$ series <br> FANUC SERVO AMPLIFIER $\beta i$ series <br> MAINTENANCE MANUAL |  |

DEFINITION OF WARNING, CAUTION, AND NOTE ..... s-1
PREFACE ..... p-1

1. CONFIGURATION ..... 1
1.1 CONTROL UNIT CONFIGURATION AND COMPONENT NAMES ..... 2
1.1.1 Configurations of Control Units ..... 2
1.2 HARDWARE OVERVIEW ..... 7
2. TOTAL CONNECTION DIAGRAMS ..... 9
3. INSTALLATION ..... 13
3.1 ENVIRONMENT FOR INSTALLATION ..... 14
3.1.1 Environmental Requirements Outside the Control Unit ..... 14
3.2 POWER SUPPLY CAPACITY ..... 15
3.2.1 Power Supply Capacities of CNC-related Units ..... 15
3.3 DESIGN AND INSTALLATION CONDITIONS OF THE MACHINE TOOL MAGNETIC CABINET ..... 16
3.4 THERMAL DESIGN OF THE CABINET ..... 18
3.4.1 Temperature Rise within the Cabinet ..... 18
3.4.2 Cooling by Heat Exchanger ..... 18
3.4.3 Heat Output of Each Unit ..... 19
3.4.4 Thermal Design of Operator's Panel ..... 20
3.5 ACTION AGAINST NOISE ..... 22
3.5.1 Separating Signal Lines ..... 22
3.5.2 Ground ..... 24
3.5.3 Connecting the Ground Terminal of the Control Unit ..... 25
3.5.4 Noise Suppressor ..... 26
3.5.5 Cable Clamp and Shield Processing ..... 27
3.5.6 Measures Against Surges due to Lightning ..... 30
3.6 CONTROL UNIT ..... 32
3.6.1 Installation of the Control Unit ..... 32
3.7 CABLING DIAGRAM ..... 35
3.8 DUSTPROOF MEASURES FOR CABINETS AND PENDANT BOXES ..... 35
4. POWER SUPPLY CONNECTION ..... 36
4.1 GENERAL ..... 37
4.2 TURNING ON AND OFF THE POWER TO THE CONTROL UNIT ..... 38
4.2.1 Power Supply for the Control Unit ..... 38
4.2.2 External 24 VDC Power Supply and Circuit Configurations ..... 39
4.2.3 Procedure for Turning On the Power ..... 43
4.2.4 Procedure for Turning Off the Power ..... 44
4.3 CABLE FOR POWER SUPPLY TO CONTROL UNIT ..... 45
4.4 BATTERIES ..... 46
4.4.1 Battery for Memory Backup (3VDC) ..... 46
4.4.2 Battery for Separate Absolute Pulse Coders (6VDC) ..... 50
4.4.3 Battery for Absolute Pulse Coder Built into the Motor (6VDC) ..... 51
5. CONNECTION TO CNC PERIPHERALS ..... 52
5.1 CONNECTION OF MDI UNIT ..... 53
5.1.1 General ..... 53
5.1.2 Key Layout of Separate-type MDI ..... 53
5.2 CONNECTION WITH INPUT/OUTPUT DEVICES ..... 56
5.2.1 Overview ..... 56
5.2.2 Connecting I/O Devices ..... 57
5.2.3 RS-232-C Serial Port ..... 58
5.2.4 RS-232-C Interface Specification ..... 60
5.2.5 FANUC Handy File Connection ..... 69
5.3 CONNECTING THE HIGH-SPEED SKIP (HDI) ..... 70
5.3.1 General ..... 70
5.3.2 Connection to the High-speed Skip (HDI) ..... 71
5.3.3 Input Signal Rules for the High-speed Skip (HDI) ..... 72
6. SPINDLE CONNECTION ..... 73
6.1 SERIAL SPINDLE ..... 74
6.1.1 Connection of One to Two Serial Spindles ..... 74
6.2 ANALOG SPINDLE INTERFACE ..... 76
6.3 POSITION CODER INTERFACE ..... 77
7. SERVO INTERFACE ..... 78
7.1 CONNECTION TO THE SERVO AMPLIFIERS ..... 79
7.1.1 General ..... 80
7.1.2 Interface to the Servo Amplifiers ..... 80
7.1.3 Separate Detector Interface ..... 81
7.1.4 Separate Detector Interface Unit Specification ..... 83
7.1.5 Connection of Power Supply ..... 83
7.1.6 Linear Scale Interface (Parallel Interface) ..... 84
7.1.7 Separate Type Pulse Coder Interface (Parallel Interface) ..... 85
7.1.8 Input Signal Requirements (Parallel Interface) ..... 89
7.1.9 Connection of Battery for Separate Absolute Detector ..... 91
7.1.10 Connector Locations ..... 93
7.1.11 Installation ..... 94
7.1.12 Notes on Installing a Separate Detector Interface Unit ..... 95
8. CONNECTION TO FANUC I/O Link ..... 97
8.1 GENERAL ..... 98
8.2 CONNECTION ..... 99
8.2.1 Connection of FANUC I/O Link by Electric Cable ..... 104
8.2.2 Power Supply Precautions ..... 104
9. CONNECTION OF I/O Link SLAVE DEVICES ..... 105
9.1 CONNECTION OF I/O UNITS FOR $0 i$ ..... 106
9.1.1 General ..... 106
9.1.2 Cautions ..... 108
9.1.3 Cable for Power Supply to Control Unit ..... 108
9.1.4 Connector Pin Arrangement ..... 110
9.1.5 Connecting DI/DO ..... 111
9.1.6 I/O Signal Requirements and External Power Supply for DO ..... 121
9.1.7 Connecting the Manual Pulse Generator ..... 125
9.2 CONNECTION TO MACHINE OPERATOR'S PANEL ..... 129
9.2.1 Overview ..... 129
9.2.2 Total Connection Diagram ..... 130
9.2.3 Connections ..... 131
9.2.3.1 Pin assignment ..... 131
9.2.3.2 Power supply connection ..... 133
9.2.3.3 I/O link connection ..... 134
9.2.3.4 Emergency stop signal connection ..... 135
9.2.3.5 Power ON/OFF control signal connection ..... 135
9.2.3.6 General-purpose DI connection ..... 136
9.2.3.7 General-purpose DO signal ..... 138
9.2.3.8 Manual pulse generator connection ..... 139
9.2.3.9 When a pendant-type manual pulse generator ..... 140
9.2.3.10 Connector (on the cable side) specifications ..... 141
9.2.4 I/O Address ..... 142
9.2.4.1 Keyboard of main panel ..... 142
9.2.4.2 Override signals ..... 143
9.2.5 I/O Mapping ..... 144
9.2.6 Connector Locations of Main Panel B ..... 144
9.2.7 Specifications ..... 145
9.2.7.1 Environmental requirement ..... 145
9.2.7.2 Orderspecification ..... 145
9.2.7.3 Main panel B, B1 specification ..... 146
9.2.7.4 Sub panel A, B1 specification ..... 146
9.2.7.5 Power supply specification ..... 146
9.2.7.6 General-purpose DI signal definition ..... 147
9.2.7.7 General-purpose DO signal definition ..... 147
9.2.8 Key Symbol Indication on Machine Operator's Panel ..... 148
9.2.8.1 Meaning of key symbols ..... 148
9.2.8.2 Detachable key top ..... 150
9.2.9 Others ..... 151
9.3 CONNECTION TO THE SMALL MACHINE OPERATOR'S PANEL ..... 154
9.3.1 Overview ..... 154
9.3.2 Overall Connection Diagram ..... 154
9.3.3 Connection of Each Section ..... 155
9.3.3.1 Power connection ..... 155
9.3.3.2 Emergency stop switch ..... 156
9.3.3.3 I/O Link connection ..... 156
9.3.3.4 Manual pulse generator connection ..... 157
9.3.4 DI Signal Connection (Rotary Switch Connection) ..... 160
9.3.5 I/O Address ..... 161
9.3.5.1 Keyboard of the operator's panel ..... 161
9.3.5.2 Override signals ..... 162
9.3.6 I/O Address Allocation ..... 163
9.3.7 External Dimensions ..... 163
9.3.7.1 Outline drawing and panel-cut drawing of the small machine operator's panel ..... 164
9.3.7.2 Layout of the key sheet ..... 165
9.3.8 Connector Layout of the Small Machine Operator's Panel ..... 167
9.3.9 Specifications ..... 168
9.3.9.1 Environmental requirement ..... 168
9.3.9.2 Orderspecification ..... 168
9.3.9.3 Operator's panel specification ..... 168
9.3.9.4 Power supply specification ..... 169
9.3.10 Key Symbol Indication on Machine Operator's Panel ..... 169
9.3.10.1 Meaning of key symbols ..... 169
9.3.10.2 Customization of the key sheet ..... 171
9.3.11 Caution ..... 171
9.3.12 MaintenanceParts ..... 172
9.4 CONNECTION OF CONNECTOR PANEL I/O MODULE ..... 173
9.4.1 Configuration ..... 173
9.4.2 Connection Diagram ..... 174
9.4.3 ModuleSpecifications ..... 175
9.4.4 DI/DO Connector Pin Assignment ..... 177
9.4.5 DI (Input Signal) Connection ..... 178
9.4.6 DO (Output Signal) Connection ..... 180
9.4.7 DI/DO Signal Specifications ..... 181
9.4.8 2A Output Connector Pin Allocation ..... 183
9.4.9 2A DO (Output Signal) Connection ..... 184
9.4.10 2A Output DO Signal Specifications ..... 185
9.4.1 Analog Input Connector Pin Allocation ..... 186
9.4.12 Analog Input Signal Connections ..... 187
9.4.13 Analog Input Signal Specifications ..... 189
9.4.14 Analog Input Specifications ..... 190
9.4.15 Manual Pulse Generator Connection ..... 192
9.4.16 Cable Length for Manual Pulse Generator ..... 193
9.4.17 Connection of Basic and Expansion Modules ..... 194
9.4.18 Module Installation ..... 195
9.4.19 Other Notes ..... 200
9.4.20 Distribution I/O Setting ..... 203
9.5 CONNECTION OF OPERATOR'S PANEL I/O MODULE (FOR MATRIX INPUT) ..... 206
9.5.1 Overall Connection Diagram ..... 206
9.5.2 Power Connection ..... 207
9.5.3 DI/DO Connector Pin Arrangement ..... 208
9.5.4 DI (General-purpose Input Signal) Connection ..... 209
9.5.5 DI (Matrix Input Signal) Connection ..... 211
9.5.6 DO (Output Signal) Connection ..... 212
9.5.7 Manual Pulse Generator Connection ..... 215
9.5.8 External View ..... 216
9.5.9 Specifications ..... 217
9.5.10 Other Notes ..... 220
9.6 CONNECTION OF OPERATOR'S PANEL I/O MODULE AND POWER MAGNETICS CABINET I/O MODULE ..... 224
9.6.1 Overall Connection Diagram ..... 224
9.6.2 Power Connection ..... 226
9.6.3 DI/DO Connector Pin Arrangement ..... 227
9.6.4 DI (General-purpose Input Signal) Connection ..... 228
9.6.5 DO (Output Signal) Connection ..... 232
9.6.6 Manual Pulse Generator Connection ..... 234
9.6.7 External View ..... 234
9.6.8 Specifications ..... 235
9.6.9 Other Notes ..... 237
9.7 CONNECTION OF SOURCE OUTPUT TYPE CONNECTION UNIT ..... 241
9.7.1 Input Signal Specifications for Source Output Type Connection Unit ..... 242
9.7.2 Output Signal Specifications for Source Output Type Connection Unit ..... 243
9.7.3 Connector Pin Layout for Source Output Type Connection Unit ..... 247
9.7.4 Dimensions of Source Output Type Connection Unit ..... 250
9.8 CONNECTING THE FANUC SERVO UNIT $\beta$ SERIES WITH I/O LINK ..... 251
9.8.1 Overview ..... 251
9.8.2 Connection ..... 252
9.8.3 Maximum Number of Units that can be Connected ..... 253
9.8.4 Address Assignment by Ladder ..... 253
10.EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL ..... 254
11.HIGH-SPEED SERIAL BUS (HSSB) ..... 257
11.1 OVERVIEW ..... 258
11.2 CAUTIONS ..... 258
11.3 CONNECTION DIAGRAM ..... 259
11.4 PERSONAL COMPUTER SPECIFICATION ..... 260
11.4.1 Specification of Personal Computer in Case that the Interface Board of ISA Type are Used ..... 260
11.4.2 Specification of Personal Computer in Case that the Interface Board of PCI Type are Used ..... 260
11.5 INSTALLATION ENVIRONMENT ..... 261
11.6 PROCEDURE FOR INSTALLING PERSONAL COMPUTER INTERFACE BOARDS ..... 262
11.7 HANDLING PRECAUTIONS ..... 264
11.8 RECOMMENDED CABLES ..... 265
12.FANUC DNC2 INTERFACE ..... 266
12.1 GENERAL ..... 267
12.2 DNC2 INTERFACE (RS-232-C) ..... 268
13.CONNECTION TO OTHER NETWORKS ..... 269
APPENDIX
A. EXTERNAL DIMENSIONS OF EACH UNIT ..... 273
B. 20-PIN INTERFACE CONNECTORS AND CABLES ..... 311
B. 1 OVERVIEW ..... 312
B. 2 BOARD-MOUNTED CONNECTORS ..... 312
B. 3 CABLE CONNECTORS ..... 313
B. 4 RECOMMENDED CONNECTORS, APPLICABLE HOUSINGS, AND CABLES ..... 315
C. CONNECTION CABLE (SUPPLIED FROM US) ..... 326
D. OPTICAL FIBER CABLE ..... 329
E. LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY (LCD) ..... 341
F. MEMORY CARD INTERFACE ..... 342
G. PROCEDURE FOR FIXING THE MEMORY CARD ..... 345

CONFIGURATION
1.1

CONTROL UNIT CONFIGURATION AND COMPONENT NAMES

The configuration and component names of control units are shown in the figures given below. This manual explains how to attach the connectors shown in these figures to devices. The numbers in parentheses () in the figures are keyed to the item numbers of the descriptions in this manual. The numbers in brackets [] in the figures are connector numbers.
1.1.1

Configurations of Control Units

Control units (A circle in the table denotes that a unit is available.)

| Display | MDI | Expansion slot | Soft key | Oi | $0 i$ Mate |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & 8.4^{\prime \prime} \text { TFT } \\ & \text { color LCD } \end{aligned}$ | LCD-mounted type (horizontal) | None | 5+2 | $\bigcirc$ | $\times$ |
|  |  | 2 | 5+2 | $\bigcirc$ | $\times$ |
|  | LCD-mounted type (vertical) | None | 5+2 | $\bigcirc$ | $\times$ |
|  |  | 2 | 5+2 | $\bigcirc$ | $\times$ |
| 7.2" STN <br> monochrome LCD | LCD-mounted type (horizontal) | None | 5+2 | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |
|  |  | 2 | $5+2$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\times$ |
|  | LCD-mounted type (vertical) | None | 5+2 | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |
|  |  | 2 | 5+2 | $\bigcirc$ | $\times$ |

Control unit


## NOTE

This figure is a front view of the control unit with an LCD. The configurations of other control units are basically the same as that shown above.
The numbers in parentheses () in the figures are keyed to the item numbers of the descriptions in this manual.


## NOTE

This figure is a rear view of the control unit without option slots.
The numbers in brackets [] in the figures are connector numbers.

Control unit


## NOTE

1 The above figures are rear views of a control unit with option slots.
2 When an option board related to a network is used, refer to the network connection manual.
The numbers in brackets [] in the figures are connector numbers.


## NOTE

The above figures are rear views of a control unit with option slots.
The numbers in parentheses () in the figures are keyed to the item numbers of the descriptions in this manual. The numbers in brackets [] in the figures are connector numbers.

I/O unit for $0 i$


## 1.2

HARDWARE OVERVIEW


Fig. 1.2 Configuration of the control unit (Series $0 i / 0 i$ Mate)

## Conditions for installing options

|  | Option | Slot nearest to the LCD |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Communication |  |  |
|  | Serial communication board |  |
| Data server | Data server board (ATA flash card and 100BASE-TX) 10BASE-T is also enabled <br> Ethernet and <br> data server functions | $\times$ |
| Network | Ethernet board (100BASE-TX) 10BASE-T is also enabled | $\times$ |
|  | DeviceNet interface board |  |
|  | PROFIBUS board $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline \begin{array}{l} \text { PROFIBUS } \\ \text { function } \end{array} \\ \hline \end{array} \begin{aligned} & \text { PROFIBUS } \\ & \text { application } \end{aligned}+\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Master } \\ \text { /slave } \end{array}$ |  |

## CAUTION

Each option listed above occupies one option slot. These option slots do not necessarily accept all option types. When selecting option slots, therefore, pay attention to the number of option slots. In this table, the symbol " $\times$ " indicates the option slot that does not accept the indicated options. Some combinations of options are unacceptable.

## TOTAL CONNECTION DIAGRAMS

Control unit


Control unit (Only when the Series $0 i$ has an option function)


## Sample I/O Link connection

## - For Series $0 i$



- For Series 0i Mate



## 3

INSTALLATION

## 3.1

ENVIRONMENT FOR
INSTALLATION

### 3.1.1

Environmental Requirements Outside the Control Unit

The peripheral units and the control unit have been designed on the assumption that they are housed in closed cabinets. In this manual "cabinet" refers to the following:

- Cabinet manufactured by the machine tool builder for housing the control unit or peripheral units;
- Operation pendant, manufactured by the machine tool builder, for housing the control unit or operator's panel.
- Equivalent to the above.

The environmental conditions when installing these cabinets shall conform to the following table. Section 3.3 describes the installation and design conditions of a cabinet satisfying these conditions.

|  | Condition | Control unit |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| Ambient <br> Temperature | Operating | $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $58^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
|  | Storage, <br> Transport | $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
|  | Normal | $75 \% \mathrm{RH}$ or less, no condensation |
|  | Short period <br> (less than 1 month) | $95 \% \mathrm{RH}$ or less, no condensation |
| Vibration | Operating | 0.5 G or less |
|  | Non-operating | 1.0 G or less |
|  | Operating |  |
|  | Non-operating to 1000 m |  |
| Environment | Normal machine shop environment <br> (The environment must be considered if the cabinets are <br> in a location where the density of dust, coolant, and/or or- <br> ganic solvent is relatively high.) |  |

## 3.2 <br> POWER SUPPLY CAPACITY

### 3.2.1 <br> Power Supply Capacities of CNC-related Units

The following CNC-related units require an input power supply that satisfies the indicated current capacities with a power supply voltage of 24 VDC $\pm 10 \%$. Here, note that momentary voltage changes and ripples are also within $\pm 10 \%$ of the power supply voltage.

Table 3.2.1 (a) Power supply capacity

| Unit |  | $\mathbf{0 i}$ | $\mathbf{0 i}$ <br> Mate | Power <br> supply <br> capacity | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Control unit | Without option slots | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | 1.5 A | $(* 1)$ |
|  | With 2 option slots | $\bigcirc$ | - | 1.7 A | $(* 1)$ |
| HSSB board | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | 0.2 A |  |  |
| Serial communication board (DNC2) | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | 0.3 A |  |  |
| Data server board | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | 0.5 A |  |  |

## NOTE

1 The liquid-crystal display and MDI unit are included. Option boards are not included.
2 For other peripheral units (such as I/O units), see Table 3.2.1 (b) and also refer to the relevant manuals.

3 When you select the input DC power supply for the CNC control section, consider the restrictions other than the power supply capacity. Be sure to see also Subsection 4.4.2.

4 When an RS-232-C device using power from NC is connected to the RS-232-C port, the power capacity increases by one ampere.

Table 3.2.1 (b) Power supply rating

| Unit | Power supply <br> capacity | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MDI unit | 0 A |  |
| Operator's panel I/O module | $0.3 \mathrm{~A}+7.3 \mathrm{~mA} \times \mathrm{DI}$ |  |
| Connector panel I/O module (basic) | $0.2 \mathrm{~A}+7.3 \mathrm{~mA} \times \mathrm{DI}$ |  |
| Connector panel I/O module (additional) | $0.1 \mathrm{~A}+7.3 \mathrm{~mA} \times \mathrm{DI}$ |  |
| I/O unit for $0 i$ | $0.3 \mathrm{~A}+7.3 \mathrm{~mA} \times \mathrm{DI}$ |  |
| Separate detector interface unit | 0.9 A | Basic 4-axis unit only |

## NOTE

For the units related to I/O, the capacity of power for DO is not included.

## 3.3 <br> DESIGN AND INSTALLATION CONDITIONS OF THE MACHINE TOOL MAGNETIC CABINET

When a cabinet is designed, it must satisfy the environmental conditions described in Section 3.1. In addition, the magnetic interference on the screen, noise resistance, and maintenance requirements must be considered. The cabinet design must meet the following conditions :

- The cabinet must be fully closed.

The cabinet must be designed to prevent the entry of airborne dust,coolant, and organic solvent.

- The cabinet must be designed so that the permissible temperature of each unit is not exceeded. For actual heat design, see Section 3.4.
- A closed cabinet must be equipped with a fan to circulate the air within. (This is not necessary for a unit with fan.)
The fan must be adjusted so that the air moves at $0.5 \mathrm{~m} / \mathrm{sec}$ along the surface of each installed unit.


## CAUTION

If the air blows directly from the fan to the unit, dust easily adheres to the unit. This may cause the unit to fail. (This is not necessary for a unit with fan.)

- For the air to move easily, a clearance of 100 mm is required between each unit and the wall of the cabinet. (This is not necessary for a unit with fan.)
- Packing materials must be used for the cable port and the door in order to seal the cabinet.
- The display unit must not be installed in such a place that coolant would directly fall onto the unit. The control unit has a dust-proof front panel, but the unit should not be placed in a location where coolant would directly fall onto it.
- Noise must be minimized.

As the machine and the CNC unit are reduced in size, the parts that generate noise may be placed near noise-sensitive parts in the magnetics cabinet.
The CNC unit is built to protect it from external noise. Cabinet design to minimize noise generation and to prevent it from being transmitted to the CNC unit is necessary. See section 3.5 for details of noise elimination/management.

- When placing units in the cabinet, also consider ease of maintenance. The units should be placed so that they can be checked and replaced easily when maintenance is performed.
- The hard disk drive and floppy disk drive must not be installed near the source of a strong magnetic field.
- The installation conditions of the I/O unit and connector panel I/O module must be satisfied.
To obtain good ventilation in the module, the I/O unit and connector panel I/O module must be installed in the direction shown in the following figure. Clearances of 100 mm or more both above and below the I/O unit are required for wiring and ventilation.
Equipment radiating too much heat must not be put below the I/O unit and connector panel I/O module.



## 3.4 <br> THERMAL DESIGN OF THE CABINET

The internal air temperature of the cabinet increases when the units and parts installed in the cabinet generate heat. Since the generated heat is radiated from the surface of the cabinet, the temperature of the air in the cabinet and the outside air balance at certain heat levels. If the amount of heat generated is constant, the larger the surface area of the cabinet, the less the internal temperature rises. The thermal design of the cabinet refers to calculating the heat generated in the cabinet, evaluating the surface area of the cabinet, and enlarging that surface area by installing heat exchangers in the cabinet, if necessary. Such a design method is described in the following subsections.

### 3.4.1 Temperature Rise within the Cabinet

The cooling capacity of a cabinet made of sheet metal is generally $6 \mathrm{~W} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ per $1 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$ surface area, that is, when the 6 W heat source is contained in a cabinet having a surface area of $1 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$, the temperature of the air in the cabinet rises by $1^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. In this case the surface area of the cabinet refers to the area useful in cooling, that is, the area obtained by subtracting the area of the cabinet touching the floor from the total surface area of the cabinet. The air in the cabinet must be circulated by the fan to prevent an extreme uneven temperature distribution.
For example, the following expression must be satisfied to limit the difference in temperature between the air in the operator's panel cabinet, which accommodates the control unit, and the outside air to $13^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or less even when the temperature in the cabinet rises.
Internal heat loss P [W] $\leqq$
$6\left[\mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{m}^{2} .{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right] \times$ surface area $\mathrm{S}\left[\mathrm{m}^{2}\right] \times 13\left[{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right]$ of rise in temperature
(A cooling capacity of $6 \mathrm{~W} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ assumes the cabinet is so large that agitation with the fan motor does not make the temperature distribution uniform. For a small cabinet like the operator's panel, a cooling capacity of $8 \mathrm{~W} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$, indicated in Subsection 3.4.4, may be used.)
For example, a cabinet having a surface area of $4 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$ has a cooling capacity of $24 \mathrm{~W} /{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$. To limit the internal temperature increase to $13^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ under these conditions, the internal heat must not exceed 312 W . If the actual internal heat is 360 W , however, the temperature in the cabinet rises by $15^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or more. When this happens, the cooling capacity of the cabinet must be improved using the heat exchanger.
For the power magnetic cabinet containing an I/O unit for Series $0 i$, the internal temperature rise must be suppressed to $10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ or less, instead of $13^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$.

### 3.4.2 Cooling by Heat Exchanger

If the temperature rise cannot be limited to $10^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ by the cooling capacity of the cabinet, a heat exchanger must be added. The heat exchanger forcibly applies the air from both the inside and outside of the cabinet to the cooling fin to obtain effective cooling. The heat exchanger enlarges the surface area.

### 3.4.3

Heat Output of Each Unit

Table 3.4.3 (a) Heat output

| Unit |  | $\mathbf{0 i}$ | $\mathbf{0 i}$ <br> Mate | Heat <br> output <br> (W) | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Control unit | Without option slots | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | 33 W | (*1) |
|  | With 2 option slots | $\bigcirc$ | - | 37 W | (*1) |
|  | HSSB board | $\bigcirc$ | - | $3 W$ |  |
|  | Serialcommunication <br> board (DNC2) | $\bigcirc$ | - | 6 W |  |
|  | Data server board | $\bigcirc$ | - | $9 W$ |  |

## NOTE

1 The liquid-crystal display and MDI unit are included. Option boards are not included.
2 When option boards are used, the total heat output of the selected option boards must not exceed the following value:

| Rack type | Total heat output |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2-slot rack | 26 W |

Table 3.4.3 (b) Heat output

| Unit | Heat output (W) | Remarks |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| MDI unit | 0W |  |
| Operator's panel I/O module | 12 W | (*1) |
| Connector panel I/O module (basic) | 8 W | (*1) |
| Connector panel I/O module (additional) | 5 W | (*1) |
| I/O unit for 0i |  | (*1) |
| Separate detector interface unit | 9 W | Basic 4-axis unit only(*2) |

## NOTE

1 The indicated values are when $50 \%$ of the module input signals are ON.
2 Heat output generated within the separate detector is not included.

### 3.4.4 <br> Thermal Design of Operator's Panel

With a small cabinet like the operator's panel, the heat dissipating capacity of the cabinet is as shown below, assuming that there is sufficient mixing of the air inside the cabinet.
Coated metal surfaces: $8 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \cdot{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
Plastic surfaces: $3.7 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \cdot{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
An example of the thermal design for the cabinet shown in Fig. 3.4.4 is shown below.


Fig. 3.4.4

Assume the following.
Thermal exchange rates : Coated metal surfaces $8 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \cdot{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
: Plastic surfaces $3.7 \mathrm{~W} / \mathrm{m}^{2} \cdot{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$
: Allowable temperature rise:
$13^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ higher than the exteriortemperature
Also, assume the following.
Dimensions of pendant type cabinet shown in Fig. 3.4.4:

$$
560(\mathrm{~W}) \times 470(\mathrm{H}) \times 150(\mathrm{D}) \mathrm{mm}
$$

Surface area of metallic sections : $0.5722 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$
Surface area of plastic sections : $0.2632 \mathrm{~m}^{2}$
In this case, the allowable total heat dissipation for the cabinet is:

$$
8 \times 0.5722 \times 13+3.7 \times 0.2632 \times 13=72 \mathrm{~W}
$$

In consequence, it can be concluded that the units shown in Table 3.4.4 on the next page can be installed in this cabinet.

Table 3.4.4

| Control unit with option 2 slots | 37 W |
| :--- | :---: |
| Option board (serial communication board) | 6 W |
| Option board (data server board) | 9 W |
| Distributed operator's panel I/O module | 12 W |
| $120-\mathrm{mm}$ square fan motor for air mixing | 8 W |
| Total heat dissipation of the above | 71 W |

## NOTE

The 12 W quoted for the I/O module of the distribution-type operator's panel represents an example heat output value when half of all the input signals are turned on. This value varies, depending on the mechanical configuration.

## 3.5 <br> ACTION AGAINST NOISE

The CNC has been steadily reduced in size using surface-mount and custom LSI technologies for electronic components. The CNC also is designed to be protected from external noise. However, it is difficult to measure the level and frequency of noise quantitatively, and noise has many uncertain factors. It is important to prevent both noise from being generated and generated noise from being introduced into the CNC. This precaution improves the stability of the CNC machine tool system.
The CNC component units are often installed close to the parts generating noise in the power magnetics cabinet. Possible noise sources into the CNC are capacitive coupling, electromagnetic induction, and ground loops.
When designing the power magnetics cabinet, guard against noise in the machine as described in the following section.

### 3.5.1 Separating Signal Lines

The cables used for the CNC machine tool are classified as listed in the following table:
Process the cables in each group as described in the action column.

| Group | Signal line | Action |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A | Primary AC power line | Bind the cables in group $A$ separately (Note 1) from groups B and C, or cover group A with an electromagnetic shield (Note 2). <br> See Section 3.5.4 and connect spark killers or diodes with the solenoid and relay. |
|  | Secondary AC power line |  |
|  | AC/DC power lines (containing the power lines for the servo and spindle motors) |  |
|  | AC/DC solenoid |  |
|  | AC/DC relay |  |
| B | DC solenoid (24VDC) | Connect diodes with DC solenoid and relay. <br> Bind the cables in group $B$ separately from group $A$, or cover group B with an electromagnetic shield. <br> Separate group B as far from Group C as possible. <br> It is more desirable to cover group $B$ with the shield. |
|  | DC relay (24VDC) |  |
|  | DI/DO cable between the CNC and power magnetics cabinet |  |
|  | DI/DO cable between the CNC and machine |  |
|  | 24-VDC input power cables connected to the control unit and its peripherals |  |
| C | I/O Link cable | Bind the cables in group $C$ separately from group A, or cover group C with an electromagnetic shield. <br> Separate group C as far from Group B as possible. <br> Be sure to perform shield processing in Section 3.5.5. |
|  | Cable for position and velocity feedback |  |
|  | Cable between the CNC and spindle amplifier |  |
|  | Cable for the position coder |  |
|  | Cable for the manual pulse generator |  |
|  | Cable between the CNC and the MDI (Note 3) |  |
|  | RS-232C and RS-422 interface cable |  |
|  | Cable for the battery |  |
|  | Other cables to be covered with the shield |  |

## NOTE

1 The groups must be 10 cm or more apart from one another when binding the cables in each group.
2 The electromagnetic shield refers to shielding between groups with grounded steel plates.
3 The shield is not required when the cable between the CNC and MDI is shorter than 30 cm .


### 3.5.2

 GroundThe CNC machine tool uses the following three types of grounding:

- Signal grounding

Signal grounding supplies a reference potential $(0 \mathrm{~V})$ for electrical signals.

- Grounding for protection

Grounding for protection is performed for safety reasons as well as to shield against external and internal noise. This type of grounding includes, for example, the equipment frames, cases and panels of units, and the shielding on interface cables connecting the equipment.

- Protective grounding (PE)

Protective grounding (PE) is performed to connect protection grounds provided for equipment or between units to ground together at one point as a grounding system.


Notes on grounding

- The ground resistance in protective grounding (PE) must be $100 \Omega$ or less (type D grounding).
- The cable used for protective grounding (PE) must be of a sufficient cross section to allow current to flow safely into protective ground (PE) if an accident such as a short-circuit occurs. (Generally, a cross section equal to or greater than that of the AC power cable is required.)
- The cable connected to protective ground (PE) must be incorporated into the AC power wire such that power cannot be supplied with the ground wire disconnected.


### 3.5.3

## Connecting the Ground

Terminal of the Control

## Unit

For 7.2"/8.4"LCD/MDI (horizontal) type



Ground cable Wire rod with a size of $2 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ or more

Connect the 0 V line in the control unit to the ground plate of the cabinet via the protective ground terminal (shown in the above figure).
For the positions of ground terminals for other units, see the unit outline drawing in the appendix.

### 3.5.4 <br> Noise Suppressor

Notes on selecting the spark killer

The AC/DC solenoid and relay are used in the power magnetics cabinet. A high pulse voltage is caused by coil inductance when these devices are turned on or off.
This pulse voltage induced through the cable causes the electronic circuits to be disturbed.

- Use a spark killer consisting of a resistor and capacitor in series. This type of spark killer is called a CR spark killer.(Use it under AC)
(A varistor is useful in clamping the peak voltage of the pulse voltage, but cannot suppress the sudden rise of the pulse voltage. FANUC therefore recommends a CR spark killer.)
- The reference capacitance and resistance of the spark killer shall conform to the following based on the current (I (A)) and DC resistance of the stationary coil:

1) Resistance ( R ) : Equivalent DC resistance of the coil
2) Capacitance (C) : $\frac{\mathrm{I}^{2}}{10}$ to $\frac{\mathrm{I}^{2}}{20} \quad(\mu \mathrm{~F})$

I : Current at stationary state of the coil [A]


Diode (used for direct-current circuits)


### 3.5.5 <br> Cable Clamp and Shield Processing

If a cable connected to the CNC, servo amplifier, spindle amplifier, or other device requires shielding, clamp the cable as shown below. The clamp both supports and shields the cable. Use this clamp to ensure stable operation of the system.
Partially peel out the sheath and expose the shield. Push and clamp by the plate metal fittings for clamp at the part. The ground plate must be made by the machine tool builder, and set as follows :


Fig. 3.5.5 (a) Cable clamp (1)


Fig. 3.5.5 (b) Cable clamp (2)

Prepare ground plate like the following figure.


Fig. 3.5.5 (c) Ground plate

For the ground plate, use a metal plate of 2 mm or thicker, which surface is plated with nickel.


Fig. 3.5.5 (d) Ground plate holes
(Reference) Outer drawings of metal fittings for clamp.


Fig. 3.5.5 (e) Outer drawings of metal fittings for clamp

Ordering specification for metal fittings for clamp A02B-0124-K001 (8 pieces)

### 3.5.6 <br> Measures Against Surges due to Lightning

To protect the devices from surge voltages due to lightening, it is recommended to install surge-absorbing elements between the lines of the input power and between one line and ground. This does not, however, assure protection from all surges due to lightening.
The recommended items are as follows. (Items made by Okaya Denki Sangyo Co.)
For the 200-V system

| Between lines | $R \cdot A \cdot V-781 B Y Z-2$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Between line and ground | $R \cdot A \cdot V-781 B X Z-4$ |

For the $400-\mathrm{V}$ system

| Between lines | $R \cdot A \cdot V-152 B Y Z-2 A$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Between line and ground | $R \cdot A \cdot V-801 B X Z-4$ |

The surge-absorbing elements used for measures against surges due to lightening must be installed in the input power unit as shown in the figure below. The figure below shows an example in which an insulating transformer, shown by dotted lines, is not installed. If an insulating transformer is installed, surge-absorbing element 2 (between line and ground) is not required.


## Notes

(1) For a better surge absorbing effect, the wiring shown by heavy line must be as short as possible.
Wire Size: $\quad$ The wire diameter must be $2 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ or greater.
Wire length: The sum of the length (a) of the wire for the connection of surge-absorbing element 1 and that (b) of surge-absorbing element 2 must be 2 m or less.
(2) If conducting dielectric strength tests by applying overvoltages (1000 VAC and 1500 VAC) to the power line, remove surge-absorbing element 2. Otherwise, the overvoltages would activate the element.
(3) The nonfuse breaker (5A) is required to protect the line when a surge voltage exceeding the capacity of the surge-absorbing elements is applied and the surge-absorbing elements are short-circuited.
(4) Because no current flows through surge-absorbing elements 1 and 2 during normal operation, the nonfuse breaker ( 5 A ) can be shared by other electric devices on the machine. It can be used with the control power supply of the servo unit power supply module or with the power supply for the fan motor of the spindle motor.

## 3.6 CONTROL UNIT

### 3.6.1 Installation of the Control Unit

The control unit has a built-in fan motor.
Air enters the control unit through the bottom and is drawn through the fan motor which is located on the top of the control unit.

Space (A), shown in Fig. 3.6.1, must be provided to ensure unrestricted air flow. Also, space (B) should be provided whenever possible. When space (B) cannot be provided, ensure that nothing is placed in the immediate vicinity which could obstruct the air flow.


Fig. 3.6.1

## Installing the I/O unit

for $0 \boldsymbol{i}$


Keep the space required to replace the print circuit board.

Unit : mm

## 3.7 <br> CABLING DIAGRAM

## 3.8 <br> DUSTPROOF MEASURES FOR CABINETS AND PENDANT BOXES

For the cabling diagram, see the control unit configuration and component names in Section 1.1.

The cabinet and pendant box that house a display and a operator's panel that are to be designed and manufactured by the machine tool builder are susceptible to dust, cutting debris, oil mist, etc. Note the following and make sure that they are structured to prevent their entry.

1) The cabinet and pendant box must be of a hermetically sealed structure.
2) Apply packing to the panel mounting surface to which a display and operator's panel are to be mounted.
3) Make sure that the door packing of the cabinet and pendant box is sealed firmly.
4) For a cabinet or pendant box with a rear cover, apply packing to the mounting surface.
5) Fill the opening between the cable and the cable entrance with a packing or connector for conduits.
6) Make sure that all other openings are blocked, if any.
7) Make sure that the display and operator's panel do not receive cutting debris and coolant directly.
8) Oil can easily stay on the top of the cabinet and pendant box, possibly dripping down the display and operator's panel. Make sure that the cabinet and pendant box is of such a structure that oil do not collect or that oil do not drip down the display or panel.


4

## POWER SUPPLY CONNECTION

4.1

GENERAL

This section explains the connection of power supply for Series 0i/Series $0 i$ Mate control unit

## 4.2

TURNING ON AND OFF THE POWER TO THE CONTROL UNIT

### 4.2.1 <br> Power Supply for the Control Unit

Supply power (24VDC) to the control uint of Series 0i/Series 0i Mate from an external sources.
Provide ON/OFF circuit A for turning the AC power on and off on the input side of the 24VDC power supply as shown in Fig. 4.2.1 (a). Avoid turning the DC power on and off (ON/OFF circuit B).


Fig. 4.2.1 (a)

ON/OFF circuit B (example)

For example, "ON/OFF circuit" is as follows : (Fig. 4.2.1 (b) ) Select the circuit devices, in consideration of its capacity.


Fig. 4.2.1 (b)

### 4.2.2 <br> External 24 VDC Power Supply and Circuit Configurations

Specifications of recommended external 24 VDC power supply (regulated power supply): (The power supply must satisfy UL1950.)
Output voltage: $\quad+24 \mathrm{~V}(10 \%(21.6 \mathrm{~V}$ to 26.4 V$)$
(including ripple voltage and noise. See the figure below.)
Output current: The continuous load current must be larger than the current consumption of the CNC.
(At the maximum temperature inside the power magnetics cabinet in which the power supply is located)
Load fluctuations (including rush current):
The output voltage must not go out of the above range due to load fluctuations by external DO and other factors.

Instantaneous input interruption retention time: 10 mS (for -100\%)
20 mS (for $-50 \%$ )


Fig 4.2.2 (a) Timing chart

- Notes to take when the vertical axis exists

When the vertical axis exists, select the DC power supply that has a long voltage hold time to decrease the amount of vertical axis falling during power-off (including a power failure).
If the operating voltage drops to less than or equal to 21.6 V , the CNC releases servo activation. Therefore, when the hold time for 24 VDC during AC power-off is too short, servo activation is released before the breaks are applied because some peripheral circuit detects power-off. This may increase the amount of vertical axis falling.
Generally, a power supply with sufficient power capacity tends to increase the hold time during power-off.

The following circuit configurations are not recommended.
1 Circuit examples that cannot retain the output voltage at an instantaneous interruption (the voltage reduces to 21.6 V or below)
Example 1


## Example 2



## NOTE

The rectifier circuit means a circuit using diodes for full-wave rectification.

2 Circuit examples that exceed the output voltage specifications (21.6 V to 26.4 V ) due to an abrupt load change
Example 1


Example 2


For a circuit configuration in example 2, connect another regulated power supply to be specifically used for the device with remarkable load fluctuations so that the CNC and other units are not affected.

If you find instructions to "turn the power on simultaneously when or before turning the power to the CNC on" for a unit such as a 24 VDC power supply, turn the power to the unit simultaneously when turning on the power to the CNC on from now on. To turn the power to such a unit simultaneously when turning the power to the CNC on, connecting the unit on the same line as for the CNC as shown in Fig. 4.2.2 (b) is recommended.
Turning the power to units on simultaneously when turning the power to the CNC:
When the following power-on timing condition is satisfied, the power to units is assumed to be turned on simultaneously when the power to the CNC is turned on.

$\mathrm{t} 1: 200 \mathrm{~ms}$ Means that the power to units (including the Power Mate) is turned on within 200 ms before the power to the CNC is turned on.
$\mathrm{t} 2: 500 \mathrm{~ms}$ Means that the power to units (including the Power Mate) is turned on within 500 ms after the power to the CNC is turned on.

For instructions to "turn the power off simultaneously when or after turning the power to the CNC off" for a unit such as a 24 VDC power supply, the power-off sequence is not changed unlike the above power-on sequence. (Turning the power off simultaneously when turning the power to the CNC on means that the power may be turned off within 500 ms before the power to the CNC is turned off.)

The following circuit configuration is recommended.
The power to the CNC and other units (A unit with I/O Link, FANUC Servo Unit $\beta$ Series with an I/O link ( $\beta$ amplifier with an I/O link), and so on in the sample configuration below) is assumed to be turned on at the same time. (The power to any unit is not assumed to be turned on during operation or before the power to the CNC is turned on. No unit is assumed to be connected between the 24 VDC output of the regulated power supply and input of on/off circuit B.)


Fig 4.2.2 (b)

### 4.2.3 <br> Procedure for Turning On the Power

Turn on the power to each unit in the following order or all at the same time.

1. Power to the overall machine ( 200 VAC )
2. Servo amplifier control power supply ( 200 VAC)
3. Power to the slave I/O units connected via the I/O link, power to the display unit (24VDC), the CNC control unit, power to the separate detector (scale), and power to the separate detector interface unit (24VDC)
"Turning on the power to all the units at the same time" means completing the power-on operations in 1 and 2 above within 500 ms of performing power-on in 3.
Do not disconnect the battery for memory backup (3 VDC) or the battery for the separate absolute pulse coders (6 VDC) regardless of whether the power to the control unit is on or off. If batteries are disconnected when the power to the control unit is turned off, current data stored in the control unit for the pulse coders, parameters, programs etc, are lost.
Make sure that the power to the control unit is on when replacing batteries.
See Section 4.4.1 for how to replace the batteries for memory backup.

### 4.2.4 <br> Procedure for Turning Off the Power

Turn off the power to each unit in the following order or all at the same time.

1. Power to the slave I/O units connected via the I/O link, power to the display unit (24VDC), the CNC control unit (24 VDC), and power to the separate detector interface unit (24 VDC)
2. Servo amplifier control power supply ( 200 VAC) and power to the separate detector (scale)
3. Power to the overall machine ( 200 VAC)
"Turning off the power to all units at the same time" means completing the power-off operations in 2 and 3 above within 500 ms before the power-off operation described in 1 above. If the power to the units indicated in 2 or 3 is turned off other than within 500 ms of the power in 1 being turned off, alarm information is left in the NC.
Motors cannot be controlled when the power is turned off or momentarily interrupted. Take appropriate action on the machine side when necessary. For example, when the tool is moved along a gravity axis, apply brakes to prevent the axis from falling. Apply a brake that clamps the motor when the servo is not operating or the motor is not rotating. Release the clamp only when the motor is rotating. When the servo axis cannot be controlled when the power is turned off or momentarily interrupted, clamp the servo motor. In this case, the axis may fall before the relay for clamping starts operating. The designer should make sure if the distance results in trouble.

## 4.3 <br> CABLE FOR POWER SUPPLY TO CONTROL UNIT

Supply power to the control unit from external resouce.
The brackets in the figures are the stand-alone type connector name.


Recommended cable : A02B-0124-K830 (5m)
(Crimp terminal of size M3 is available on the external power side)

## 4.4 BATTERIES

In a system using this CNC, batteries are used as follows:

| Use | Component connected to <br> battery |
| :--- | :--- |
| Memory backup in the CNC control unit | CNC control unit |
| Preservation of the current position indicated <br> by the separate absolute pulse coder | Separate detector interface <br> unit |
| Preservation of the current position indicated <br> by the absolute pulse coder built into the motor | Servo amplifier |

Used batteries must be discarded according to appropriate local ordinances or rules. When discarding batteries, insulate them by using tape and so forth to prevent the battery terminals from short-circuiting.

### 4.4.1 <br> Battery for Memory Backup (3VDC)

Part programs, offset data, and system parameters are stored in CMOS memory in the control unit. The power to the CMOS memory is backed up by a lithium battery mounted on the front panel of the control unit. The above data is not lost even when the main battery goes dead. The backup
battery is mounted on the control unit at shipping. This battery can maintain the contents of memory for about a year.
When the voltage of the battery becomes low, alarm message "BAT" blinks on the display and the battery alarm signal is output to the PMC. When this alarm is displayed, replace the battery as soon as possible. In general, the battery can be replaced within two or three weeks, however, this depends on the system configuration.
If the voltage of the battery becomes any lower, memory can no longer be backed up. Turning on the power to the control unit in this state causes system alarm 935 (ECC error) to occur because the contents of memory are lost. Clear the entire memory and reenter data after replacing the battery.
Therefore, FANUC recommends that the battery be replaced once a year regardless of whether alarms are generated.
The power to the control unit must be turned on when the battery is replaced. If the battery is disconnected when the power is turned off, the contents of memory are lost.
Observe the following precautions for lithium batteries:

## WARNING

If an unspecified battery is used, it may explode.
Replace the battery only with the specified battery (A02B-0200-K102.)

In addition to the Lithium battery built into the CNC control unit, commercial $D$-size alkaline batteries can be used by installing the battery case externally.

## NOTE

A lithium battery is installed as standard at the factory.

## Replacing the lithium battery

(1)Prepare a new lithium battery (ordering drawing number: A02B-0200-K102).
(2) Turn on the power of the control unit once for about 30 seconds.
(3) Turn off the power of the control unit.
(4) Remove the old battery from the top of the CNC control unit.

First unplug the battery connector then take the battery out of its case. The battery case of a control unit without option slots is located at the top right end of the unit. That of a control unit with 2 slots is located in the central area of the top of the unit (between fans).
(5) Insert a new battery and reconnect the connector.

## NOTE

Complete steps (3) to (5) within 10 minutes. Do not leave the control unit without a battery for any longer than the period shown, as this will result in the contents of memory being lost.


## WARNING

Incorrect battery replacement may cause an explosion. Do not use a battery other than that specified (specification: A02B-0200-K102).

# Replacing the alkaline dry cells (size D) 

(1) Prepare two new alkaline dry cells (size D ).
(2) Turn on the power of the control unit once for about 30 seconds.
(3) Turn off the power of the control unit.
(4) Remove the battery case cover.
(5) Replace the batteries, paying careful attention to their orientation.
(6) Replace the battery case cover.

## NOTE

When replacing the dry cells, use the same procedure as that for lithium battery replacement procedure, described above.


## Use of alkaline dry cells

(size D)
Connection
Power from the external batteries is supplied through the connector to which the lithium battery is connected. The lithium battery, provided as standard, can be replaced with external batteries in the battery case (A02B-0236-C281) according to the battery replacement procedures described above.


## NOTE

1 Install the battery case (A02B-0236-C281) in a location where the batteries can be replaced even when the control unit power is on.
2 The battery cable connector is attached to the control unit by means of a simple lock system. To prevent the connector from being disconnected due to the weight of the cable or tension within the cable, fix the cable section within 50 cm of the connector.

### 4.4.2 <br> Battery for Separate Absolute Pulse Coders (6VDC)

One battery unit can maintain current position data for six absolute pulse coders for a year.
When the voltage of the battery becomes low, APC alarms $3 n 6$ to $3 n 8$ (n: axis number) are displayed on the LCD display. When APC alarm 3n7 is displayed, replace the battery as soon as possible. In general, the battery should be replaced within one or two weeks, however, this depends on the number of pulse coders used.
If the voltage of the battery becomes any lower, the current positions for the pulse coders can no longer be maintained. Turning on the power to the control unit in this state causes APC alarm 3n0 (reference position return request alarm) to occur. Return the tool to the reference position after replacing the battery.
Therefore, FANUC recommends that the battery be replaced once a year regardless of whether APC alarms are generated.
See Section 7.1.3 for details of connecting the battery to separate absolute pulse coders.

Obtain four commercially available alkaline batteries (size D).
(1) Turn on the power of the machine (turn on the servo amplifier).
(2)Loosen the screws of the battery case, and remove the cover.
(3) Replace the dry batteries in the case.

Note the polarity of the batteries as shown in the figure below (orient two batteries one way and the other two in the opposite direction).

(4) After installing the new batteries, replace the cover.
(5) Turn off the power to the machine.

## WARNING

If the batteries are installed incorrectly, an explosion may occur. Never use batteries other than the specified type (Size D alkaline batteries).

## CAUTION

The battery must be replaced with the power of the machine turned on (the servo amplifier turned on).
Note that, if batteries are replaced while no power is supplied to the CNC, the recorded absolute position is lost.

### 4.4.3 <br> Battery for Absolute Pulse Coder Built into the Motor (6VDC)

The battery for the absolute pulse coder built into the motor is installed in the servo amplifier. For how to connect and replace the battery, refer to the following manuals:

- FANUC SERVO MOTOR dis series Maintenance Manual
- FANUC SERVO MOTOR $\beta i$ series Maintenance Manual
- FANUC SERVO MOTOR $\beta i$ series (I/O Link Option) Maintenance Manual


## CONNECTION TO CNC PERIPHERALS

5
5.1

CONNECTION OF
MDI UNIT

### 5.1.1 <br> General

For this LCD-mounted type CNC, the controller, display unit, and MDI are connected in the unit, so a machine tool builder does not need to connect them. Therefore, this subsection shows the key layouts of various MDIs.

### 5.1.2

Key Layout of Separate-type MDI

Compact keys for lathe series (T series)
(horizontal type)


Compact keys for machine center series (M series) (horizontal type)


Standard keys for lathe series (T series) (vertical type)


Standard keys for machine center series (M series) (vertical type)


## 5.2 <br> CONNECTION WITH <br> INPUT/OUTPUT <br> DEVICES

### 5.2.1

Overview

An input/output device is used to enter information such as CNC programs and parameters from an external device to the CNC, or to output information from the CNC to an external device.
Input/output devices include Handy FILE.
The interface of the input/output devices electrically conforms to RS-232-C, so that a connection can be made with a device that has an RS-232-C interface.

The tables below indicate the serial ports.

| Port name | Interface location |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| First channel (JD36A) | Main control unit |  |
| Second channel (JD36B) | Main control unit |  |

### 5.2.2

## Connecting I/O Devices



## NOTE

This interface is the RS-232C interface on the CNC side.
This RS-232C interface on the CNC side can be used on the 0i-C/0i Mate-C only for the following purposes:

Ladder uploading or downloading via RS-232-C using FANUC-LADDER or FANUC-LADDER II
Ladder monitoring from an external PC using FANUC-LADDER II
DNC operation via RS-232-C, external I/O device control
Input/output of parameters and programs by using the CNC screen display function

### 5.2.3

## RS-232-C Serial Port



## NOTE

$1+24 \mathrm{~V}$ can be used as the power supply for FANUC RS-232-C equipment.
2 Do not connect anything to those pins for which signal names are not indicated.
3 Pins 18 and $20(+5 \mathrm{~V})$ are provided for touch channel connection.

## CABLE CONNECTION



GROUNDING PLATE

RECOMMENDED CABLE SPECIFICATION
A66L-0001-0284\#10P (\#28AWG $\times 10$ pairs)
RECOMMENDED CABLE-SIDE CONNECTORS (JD36A, JD36B, JD5A, JD5B)
PCR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.)
FI30-20S (Hirose Electric Co., Ltd.)
FCN-247J020-G/E (Fujitsu, Ltd.)
52622-2011 (Molex Japan Co., Ltd.)
RECOMMENDED CABLE SPECIFICATION (PUNCH PANEL)
For JD36A and JD36B <Narrow width type> A02B-0236-C191 (1 m)
A02B-0236-C192 (2 m)
A02B-0236-C193 (5 m)

## NOTE

Do not connect anything to those pins for which signal names are not indicated.

### 5.2.4

RS-232-C Interface Specification

RS-232-C Interface signals

Generally signals as follows are used in RS-232-C interface.


Fig. 5.2.4 (a) RS-232-C interface

| Signal name | RS-232C circuit number | I/O | Description |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SD | 103 | Output | Sending data |  |
| RD | 104 | Input | Receiving <br> data |  |
| RS | 105 | Input | Sending request | This signal is set to on when NC starts sending data and is turned off when transmission ends. |
| CS | 106 | Input | Sending permitted | When both this signal and the DR signal are set, the NC can send data. If external device processing is delayed by a punching operation, etc., NC data sending can be stopped by turning off this signal after sending two characters, including the data being sent currently. If this signal will not be used, make sure to strap this signal circuit to the RS signal circuit. |
| DR | 107 | Input | Data set ready | When external device is ready to operate, this signal is set. This signal should usually be connected to the signal indicating external device power supply being on. (ER signal of external device). See Note below. The NC transfers data when this signal is set. If the signals turned off during data transfer, alarm 086 is issued. If the DR signal will not be used, make sure to strap this signal circuit to the ER signal circuit. |
| ER | 108.2 | Output | NC ready to operation | This signal is set when the NC is ready to operate. External device should regard the SD signal as being significant when the ER signal is set. |
| $C D$ | 109 | Input | Signal quality signal | Since this signal is not used in connections with external device, the signal circuit must be strapped, inside the connecting cable, to the ER signal circuit. |
| SG | 102 |  | Signal grounding |  |
| FG | 101 |  | Frame grounding |  |

## NOTE

Signal on/off state is defined as follows;

|  | -3V or lower | +3V or higher |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Function | OFF | ON |
| Signal Condition | Marking | Spacing |

## Start-stop

Codes
Generally, two transmission methods are available at the serial interface. this CNC use the start-stop method. With this method, start and stop signals are output before and after each data bit.


Transmission codes are as follows:
(i) EIA code and Control codes DC1 to DC4.
(ii) ISO code and Control codes DC1 to DC4 (Optional ISO code input is necessary.)
The connected external device must be able to recognize the following control codes, sent from NC.

| Control code |  | $\mathbf{8}$ | $\mathbf{7}$ | $\mathbf{6}$ | $\mathbf{5}$ | $\mathbf{4}$ |  | $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| DC1 | Tape reader start |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |
| DC2 | Tape punch designation |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |
| DC3 | Tape reader stop | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |
| DC4 | Tape punch release |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |

## NOTE

The listed control codes are used for both EIA and ISO.

In this interface, control codes DC1 to DC4 are used.
(a) NC can control external device by issuing codes DC1 to DC4.
(b) When external processing falls behind the pace of the NC signals (When NC issues data)
(i) External device can temporarily stop NC data output by using the NC's CS signal. Data output stops within two characters including a currently transmitting character when CS OFF signal is input to NC. When CS signal is turned on again, data transmission start.
(ii) If control code DC3 is input to NC, NC stops data output within ten characters. When control code DC1 is input to NC, NC starts sending data again.
(c) When the external device is equipped with an ISO/EIA converter, the external device must satisfy the specification shown in Table 5.2.4.

Table 5.2.4

| ISO code |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | EIA code |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | Meaning |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Character | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 |  | 3 | 2 | 1 | Character | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 |  | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |  |
| 0 |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | 0 |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - |  |  |  |  | Numeral 0 |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | 1 |  |  |  |  |  | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Numeral 1 |
| 2 | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | 2 |  |  |  |  |  | - |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | Numeral 2 |
| 3 |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | 3 |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | Numeral 3 |
| 4 | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | 4 |  |  |  |  |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | Numeral 4 |
| 5 |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | 5 |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | O |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Numeral 5 |
| 6 |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | 6 |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | Numeral 6 |
| 7 | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | 7 |  |  |  |  |  | - | O | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | Numeral 7 |
| 8 | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  |  | 8 |  |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  |  |  | Numeral 8 |
| 9 |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | 9 |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | 0 | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Numeral 9 |
| A |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | a |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address A |
| B |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | b |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | Address B |
| C | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | c |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address C |
| D |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | d |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | Address D |
| E | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | e |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | ? | Address E |
| F | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | - | O | $\bigcirc$ |  | f |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | O |  | - | O | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | Address F |
| G |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | g |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | O | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address G |
| H |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  |  | h |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  |  |  | Address H |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | i |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address I |
| J | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | j |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address J |
| K |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | k |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | Address K |
| L | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | 1 |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address L |
| M |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | m |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | O |  |  |  | Address M |
| N |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | n |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | - | O |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address N |
| 0 | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | o |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | - | O | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | Address O |
| P |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | p |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | 0 |  | $\bullet$ | O | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address P |
| Q | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | q |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  | Address Q |
| R | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | r |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address R |
| S |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | s |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | Address S |
| T | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | t |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address T |
| U |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | u |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | Address U |
| V |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | O | $\bigcirc$ |  | v |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | O |  | $\bigcirc$ | ? | Address V |
| W | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | w |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - | O | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | Address W |
| X | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  |  | x |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - | O | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address X |
| Y |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | y |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  |  | ? | Address Y |
| Z |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | z |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | 0 | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | Address Z |
| DEL | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | Del |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ | O | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | * |  |
| NUL |  |  |  |  |  | - |  |  |  | Blank |  |  |  |  |  | - |  |  |  | * |  |
| BS | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | 0 | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | BS |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | 0 | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | * |  |
| HT |  |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | Tab |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | * |  |
| LF or NL |  |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | CR or EOB | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  | - |  |  |  |  |  |
| CR | 0 |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ | O |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - | - |  |  |  |  |  |  | * |  |
| SP | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - |  |  |  | SP |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  |  |  | * |  |
| \% | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | ER |  |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |
| ( |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | ( 2-4-5) |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |
| ) | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | 0 | $\bullet$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | ( 2-4-7) |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |
| + |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | + |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  | * |  |
| - |  |  | 0 |  | 0 | $\bullet$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | $\bullet$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| : |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | 1 |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |
| . |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | 0 | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | . |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |
| \# | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  | - | - |  |  |  |  |  |
| \$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| \& | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bullet$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | \& |  |  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |
|  |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  | - | - |  |  |  | * |  |
| * | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | * |  |
| , | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | , |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | * |  |
| - | 0 |  | $\bigcirc$ | 0 | 0 | - |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | 7 | * |  |
| < |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | $\square$ |  |  | * |  |
| = | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  | $\square$ |  |  |  |  | * |  |
| > | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  | - | - |  |  |  |  |  | * |  |
| ? |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | - | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | * |  |
| @ | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  | - |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | * |  |
| " |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bullet$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\square$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | * |  |

## NOTE

1 When the external device is equipped with an ISO/EIA converter, the following items must be noted in Table 5.2.4 (a).


## Condition1

Left parenthesis "("of the ISO code punches holes at bits 2, 4 and 5 when used in the EIA code.
Right parenthesis ")"of the ISO code punches holes at bits 2, 4 and 7 when used in the EIA code.
Condition2
EIA code CR is LF in ISO code.
Condition3
EIA code $O$ is : in ISO code.

2 Control codes DC1 to DC4 are transmission codes output from the NC. So they need not to be punched on the NC tape.
(iii) Transmission rate (Baud rate)

The transmission rate (Baud rate) is the number of bits transferred per second.
The following baud rates are available depending on the system parameter.

50, 100, 110, 150, 200, 300, 600, 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600.
(Example)
Baud rate : 110
When using one start bit and two stop bits (totalling 11 bits per character):
Transmission characters/second $=\frac{110}{11}=10$ characters/second
(Max.)
(iv) Cable length

The cable length depends on the external device type. Consult with the device manufacturers for actual connecting cable lengths.
When cable A (A66L-0001-0041) is used, cable length is as follows by the specification of NC.
for RS-232C 100m or less ... 4800 bauds or less
50 m or less ... 9600 bauds or less

## Time chart when the NC receives data (Read into memory)

(1) NC outputs DC1.
(2) The I/O device starts sending data upon receiving DC1.
(3) NC sends DC3 when NC processing is delayed.
(4) The I/O device stops sending data to NC after receiving DC3.

The device may send up to 10 characters after receiving DC3. If it sends more than 10 characters, alarm 087 will occur.
(5) NC reissues DC1 upon completing delayed processing.
(6) The I/O device restarts data output upon receiving the DC1 code (the data must be the next data to the preceding.)
(7) NC sends DC3 upon completing data read.
(8) The I/O device stops sending data.


## Time chart when the NC send data (Punch out)

(1) NC output DC2.
(2) NC outputs punch data in succession.
(3) When data processing is delayed at the I/O device.
(a) Data output stops within two characters including a currently transmitting character when CS signal is turned off.
When CS signal is turned on again, data transmission starts. (See Fig. 5.2.4 (b))
(b) If control code DC3 is input to NC, NC stops data output within ten characters. When control code DC1 is input to NC, NC starts sending data again. (See Fig. 5.2.4 (c))
(4) The NC starts sending the next data if the CS signal is turned on after the I/O device completes data processing.
(5) The NC issues DC4 upon completing data output.


Fig. 5.2.4 (b)


Fig. 5.2.4 (c)

## Connection between

RS-232-C interface and I/O device


- When the ER signal and the DR signal are not used for a handshake, the following connection is used.


Prepare the cable with I/O device as follows :


### 5.2.5

FANUC Handy File Connection


## NOTE

1 Machine tool builder shall furnish relay connector and relay cable.
2 Use a totally shielded cable for the signal cable.
Recommended cable specification: A66L-0001-0284\#10P
3 Open all terminals other than illustrated.
4 Set suitable parameters on reader/puncher interface for FANUC Handy File. The baud rate is 4800 baud in standard.
5 Only one FANUC Handy File unit can be connected to a system. If FANUC Handy File units are connected to multiple channels, a power capacity of +24 V will be exceeded.
6 Make no connections to pins $18(+5 \mathrm{~V})$ and $20(+5 \mathrm{~V})$.

## 5.3 <br> CONNECTING THE <br> HIGH-SPEED SKIP <br> (HDI)

### 5.3.1

## General



### 5.3.2

Connection to the High-speed Skip (HDI)

CNC


Signals inside ( ) are used with the analog spindle.

## NOTE

Leave connector pins unconnected if they are not intended for use.

Cable connections


### 5.3.3

Input Signal Rules for
the High-speed Skip
(HDI)

## Circuit configuration



Absolute maximum rating
Input voltage range Vin: -3.6 to +13.6 V
Input characteristics

| Unit | Symbol | Specification | Unit | Remark |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| High level input voltage | VH | 3.6 to 11.6 | V |  |
| Low level input voltage | VL | 0 to 1.0 | V |  |
| High level input current | liH | 2 max | mA | Vin=5 V |
|  | 11 max | mA | Vin $=10 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |
| Low level input current | liL | -8.0 max | mA | Vin $=0 \mathrm{~V}$ |
| Input signal pulse duration |  | 20 min | $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |  |
| Input signal delay or <br> variations |  | 0.02 (max) | ms |  |

## NOTE

1 The plus (+) sign of liH/liL represents the direction of flow into the receiver. The minus (-) sign of liH/liL represents the direction of flow out of the receiver.
2 The high-speed skip signal is assumed to be 1 when the input voltage is at the low level and 0 when it is at the high level.
3 The input level for the CNC receiver is high when the circuit is open. So, the input level for the external driver must be low.

## C SPINDLE CONNECTION

The figure below shows the spindle-related connections. Note that the number of connectable spindles depends on the model. So, see the tables that follow the figure below.


|  | Series $\mathbf{0} \boldsymbol{i}$ |  |  |  |  | Series 0i Mate |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| First serial spindle | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |
| Second serial spindle |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  |  |  |  |
| Analog output |  |  | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |
| Position coder |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |  | $\bigcirc$ |  |

## 6.1

SERIAL SPINDLE

### 6.1.1

Connection of One to Two Serial Spindles


## NOTE

1 When an optical cable is used for connection between the NC and a spindle amplifier, the +5 V signals indicated in parentheses are used to feed power to the optical I/O adapter. Do not connect these signals when an optical cable is not used. The signals in brackets ([ ]) are used when a position coder is used with an analog spindle is used.
2 The second serial spindle is connected as a branch from the spindle amplifier module.
3 The $\alpha i$ spindle cannot be connected to the conventional optical I/O link adapter. The optical adapter (A13B-0154-B003) must be used instead.

Cable connection


Recommended cable connector:
PCR-E20FA (manufactured by Honda Tsushin Kogyo)
FCN-247J020-G/E (manufactured by Fujitsu)
52622-2011 (manufactured by Molex Japan)

Recommended wire specification:
A66L-0001-0284\#10P (\#28AWG $\times 10$ pairs)

## NOTE

In any of the following cases, make a connection via an optical fiber cable by using an optical I/O link adapter:

- When the cable is 20 m or longer
- When the power magnetics cabinet containing a spindle amplifier cannot be connected with the operator's panel cabinet containing a CNC control unit via a ground wire with a cross-sectional area of $5.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ or more
- When the cable is subject to significant noise. For example, when there is a strong electromagnetic noise source such as a welding machine near the cable, or when the cable runs in parallel with a power line or power magnetics cable that can generate noise.


## 6.2

ANALOG SPINDLE INTERFACE


## NOTE

1 Signals ENB1 and ENB2 turn on when the spindle command voltage is effective. These signals are used when the FANUC Analog Spindle Servo Unit is used.
2 The analog output ratings are as follows:
Output voltage: $\pm 10 \mathrm{~V}$
Output current: 2 mA (maximum)
Output impedance: 100 ohms
3 The parenthesized signals are used for the high-speed skip function (HDI).

## 6.3 POSITION CODER INTERFACE

| CNC |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| JD7A <br> PCR-E20MDK-SL-A |  |  |  | Signal Name | Description |
|  |  |  |  | SC, *SC | Position coder phase C signals |
| 1 | ( ) | 11 |  | PA, *PA | Position coder phase A signals |
| 2 | ( ) | 12 | OV | PB, *PB | Position coder phase B signals |
| 3 | ( ) | 13 |  | SOUT, *SOUT | Serial spindle signals (Note) |
| 4 | ( ) | 14 | OV | SIN, *SIN |  |
| 5 | PA | 15 | SC |  |  |
| 6 | *PA | 16 | OV |  |  |
| 7 | PB | 17 | *SC |  |  |
| 8 | *PB | 18 | +5V |  |  |
| 9 | $+5 \mathrm{~V}$ | 19 | ( ) |  |  |
| 10 | ( ) | 20 | +5V |  |  |


| CNC | POSITION CODER |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{array}{r} \text { PA } \\ * P A \end{array}$ |  | A (PA) |
|  | 5 |  |
|  | 6 | $N$ (*PA) |
|  | 7 - |  |
| PB | - | C (PB) |
| *PB |  | R (*PB) |
| SC | 15 | B $(* P \mathrm{P})$P |
| *SC | 17 |  |
| +5V | 9,18,20 | P (*PZ) |
| +5V | 12,14,16 | K |
|  | - SHIELD - ل |  |
|  | 17 |  |
| GROUNDING |  |  |
| PLATE |  |  |
| RECOMMENDED CABLE-SIDE CONNECTOR |  |  |
| PR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.) |  |  |
| CN-247J020-G/E (Fujitsu, Ltd.) |  |  |
| 2622-2011 (Molex Japan Co., Ltd.) |  |  |
| RECOMMENDED CABLE SPECIFICATION: |  |  |
| 66L-0001-0286 (\#20AWG $\times 6+$ \#24AWG $\times 3$ ), |  |  |
| MAX. LENGTH 20 |  |  |

## NOTE

1 The signals for a serial spindle are parenthesized. These signals are not used for an analog spindle.
2 As the connector on the cable side, the solder-type 15-pin connector (FI40B-2015S, or conventional FI40-2015S) manufactured by Hirose Electric cannot be used.

## T SERVO INTERFACE

## 7.1

CONNECTION TO
THE SERVO
AMPLIFIERS


### 7.1.1

General

This chapter describes how to connect the servo units to the Series $0 i / 0 i$ Mate. For details of the connection of the Servo amplifier, refer to the each servo amplifier manual.

### 7.1.2

Interface to the Servo Amplifiers


The connection between the CNC control unit and the servo amplifiers should use only one optical fiber cable, regardless of the number of controlled axes. See APPENDIX D for details on the optical fiber cable. In the control unit, the COP10A connector is placed on the servo card installed on the main board.

### 7.1.3

## Separate Detector

Interface



Up to 2 axes with Series $0 i$ Mate-TC Up to 3 axes with Series $0 i$ Mate-MC Up to 4 axes with Series $0 i-T C / M C$


When a separate pulse coder or linear scale is used, a separate detector interface unit, as shown above, is required. The separate detector interface unit should be connected to the CNC control unit through an optical fiber cable, as one of the units on the servo interface (FSSB). Although the above figure shows the separate detector interface connected in the final stage of the FSSB line, it can also be connected, at the nearest location, to the CNC control unit. Or, it can be installed between two servo amplifier modules.

### 7.1.4

Separate Detector Interface Unit Specification

The interface unit can feed $0.35 \mathrm{~A}(5 \mathrm{~V})$ to each separate detector.

| Item | Specification |
| :--- | :--- |
| Power supply capacity | Voltage 24 VDC $\pm 10 \%$ <br> Current 0.9 A (basic unit only) <br> 1.5 A (basic unit + expansion unit) |
| Ordering information | A02B-0236-C205 (basic) |
| Method of installation | An interface unit can be installed by using <br> screws or a DIN rail. |

### 7.1.5

 Connection of Power SupplyPower to the separate detector interface unit should be supplied from an external 24 V DC power supply.
Extended units are powered by the basic unit.

| Separate detector interface unit (basic) |  | External power supply |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CP11A |  | 24 V DC regulated power supply <br> 24 V DC $\pm 10 \%$ |
| 1 | +24V |  |
| 2 <br> 3 | OV |  |
| Cable |  |  |
| CP11A <br> AMP JAPAN <br> 1-178288-3 (Housing) <br> 1-175218-5 (Contact) |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  | External power |
|  |  | supply |
| $\begin{array}{r} \hline+24 \mathrm{~V}(1) \\ \mathrm{OV}(2) \end{array}$ |  | Select a connector that |
|  |  | matches the pin layout of the external power |
|  |  | supply. |
| Recommended cable specification: A02B-0124-K830 (5 m) (The external power supply end of the cable is provided with M3 crimp terminals.) |  |  |

The 24 V DC input to CP11A can be output at CP11B for use in branching. The connection of CP11B is identical to that of CP11A. In this case, the power supplied to CP11A should be equal to the sum of the rating of the separate detector interface unit and that of the units after CP11B.

### 7.1.6

## Linear Scale Interface (Parallel Interface)



Cable wiring


RECOMMENDED CABLE MATERIAL
A66L-0001-0286 (\#20AWG $\times 6+$ \#24AWG $\times 3$-pair)
Recommended connectors:
PCR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin Kogyo)
FI30-20S (Hirose Electric)
FCN-247J020-G/E (Fujitsu)
52622-2011 (Molex)
FI40B-2015S (Hirose Electric)

## NOTE

The +5 V signals above can be used to feed power to the linear scales. The supply current per linear scale is 0.35 A maximum.
Minimum tolerance to 5 V : 4.95 V for main unit and 4.9 V for expanded section

### 7.1.7

## Separate Type Pulse

 Coder Interface (Parallel Interface)- For absolute detector

Separate detector interface unit

| JF101 to JF104 |
| :--- |
| (PCR-EV20MDT) |
| 1 PCA 11  <br> 2 *PCA 12 0 V <br> 3 PCB 13  <br> 4 *PCB 14 0 V <br> 5 PCZ 15  <br> 6 *PCZ 16 0 V <br> 7 +6 V 17  <br> 8 REQ 18 +5 V <br> 9 +5 V 19  <br> 10  20 +5 V |$.$|  |
| :--- |


|  | Separatedetector |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Pulse coder (MS3102A-22-14P) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | A | PCA | B | *PCA | C | PCB | D | *PCB |
|  | E | PCZ | F | *PCZ | G |  | H |  |
| $\square \square$ | J |  | K |  | L | +5V | M | OV |
|  | N | SHLD | P |  | R |  | S | REQ |
| , | T | +6VA | U | OVA | V |  |  |  |

Cable wiring


RECOMMENDED CABLE MATERIAL
A66L-0001-0286 (\#20AWG $\times 6+$ \#24AWG $\times 3$-pair)
Recommended connectors:
PCR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin Kogyo)
FI30-20S (Hirose Electric)
FCN-247J020-G/E (Fujitsu)
52622-2011 (Molex)
FI40B-2015S (Hirose Electric)

## NOTE

The +5 V signals above can be used to feed power to linear scales. The supply current per linear scale is 0.35 A maximum.
Minimum tolerance to 5 V : 4.95 V for main unit and 4.9 V for expanded section

## (Parallel interface)

- For incremental detector



## Cable wiring



GROUNDING PLATE
RECOMMENDED CABLE MATERIAL
A66L-0001-0286 (\#20AWG $\times 6$ + \#24AWG $\times 3$-pair)
Recommended connectors:
PCR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin Kogyo)
FI30-20S (Hirose Electric)
FCN-247J020-G/E (Fujitsu)
52622-2011 (Molex)
FI40B-2015S (Hirose Electric)

## NOTE

The +5 V signals above can be used to feed power to linear scales. The supply current per linear scale is 0.35 A maximum.
Minimum tolerance to 5 V : 4.95 V for main unit and 4.9 V for expanded section

Connection to a detector made by another manufacturer (Serial interface)


## NOTE

1 The +5 V signals above can be used to feed power to detectors. The supply current per detector is 0.35 A maximum.
Minimum tolerance to 5 V : 4.95 V for main unit and 4.9 V for expanded section
2 When the 9096 series servo software is used, the serial interface cannot be used.

## (Serial interface)



## Cableconnection



Recommended cable:
A66L-0001-0286 (\#20AWG $\times 6+\# 24 A W G \times 3$ pairs)
Recommended connector:
PCR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin Kogyo)
FI30-20S (Hirose Electric)
FCN-247J020-G/E (Fujitsu)
52622-2011 (Molex Japan)
FI40B-2015S (Hirose Electric)

## NOTE

1 The +5 V signals above can be used to feed power to linear scales. The supply current per linear scale is 0.35 A maximum.
Minimum tolerance to 5 V : 4.95 V for main unit and 4.9 V for expanded section
2 When the 9096 series servo software is used, the serial interface cannot be used.
7.1.8

Input Signal Requirements (Parallel Interface)

The standard of the feedback signal from the additional detector is as shown below.
(1) A and B phase signal input

This is a method to input position information by the mutual 90 degree phase slip of $A$ and $B$ phase signals.
Detection of the position is performed with the state in which the $B$ phase is leading taken as a shift in the plus direction, and the state in which the A phase is leading as a shift in the minus direction.

(2) Phase difference and minimum repeat frequency

(3) Z phase signal input

For the Z phase signal (1 rotation signal), a signal width of more than $1 / 4$ frequency of the A phase or B phase signals is necessary.


## Time requirements

## Receiver circuit

Relationship between the direction of rotation of the servo motor and that of the separate pulse coder

Requirements for the signals at the input pins of input connectors JF101 to JF108.
$\mathrm{TD} \geqq 0.15 \mu \mathrm{sec}$
The signals for these connectors are differential input signals with A and B phases. An important factor is time TD from point A , when the potential difference between PCA and *PCA exceeds 0.5 V , to point B , when the potential difference between PCB and *PCB becomes lower than 0.5 V . The minimum value of TD is $0.15 \mu \mathrm{~s}$. The period and pulse width of the signals must be long enough to satisfy the above requirements.


If the separate pulse coder rotates in the opposite direction to that of the servo motor, reconnect the interface cable of the separate pulse coder as described below.
(1) Exchange signal PCA with signal PCB.
(2) Exchange signal *PCA with signal *PCB.

### 7.1.9

## Connection of Battery

 for Separate Absolute DetectorSeparate detector interface unit



## CABLE CONNECTION



RECOMMENDED CABLE MATERIAL:
$\geqq 0.2 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}(7 / 0.18)$
Recommended connectors:
PCR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin Kogyo)
FI30-20S (Hirose Electric)
FCN-247J020-G/E (Fujitsu)
52622-2011 (Molex)

## NOTE

The battery for the separate absolute detector is required only when the separate absolute detector is used. When an absolute pulse coder with built-in motor is used, it is powered by the built-in battery of the amplifier, such that the battery for the separate absolute detector is not required.

### 7.1.10

Connector Locations

Connector locations on the basic unit


For the outside dimensions, see Appendix A.

### 7.1.11 Installation

1) Notes on installation
(1) Use an interface unit in a completely enclosed cabinet.
(2) Install an interface unit on a vertical surface, and provide a space of 100 mm above and below the unit. Below an interface unit, do not place equipment that generates a large amount of heat.

2) Installation using screws

7.1.12

## Notes on Installing a Separate Detector Interface Unit

## CAUTION

To install/remove the unit, a screwdriver must be inserted obliquely. So, sufficient access clearances are required on both sides of the unit. As a guideline, if the front of an adjacent unit appears flush with the unit or slightly set back, allow a clearance of about 20 mm between the unit and the adjacent unit. If the front of an adjacent unit protrudes beyond the front of the unit, allow a clearance of about 70 mm between the unit and the adjacent unit. Also, when installing the unit near a side of the cabinet, allow a clearance of about 70 mm between the unit and the side of the cabinet.


Access clearance near a separate detector interface unit

Installing the unit on the DIN rail


Installing the unit:

1. Hook the unit on the top of the DIN rail.
2. Push the unit in until it clicks.

Removing the unit:

1. Push down the lock by using a screwdriver.
2. Remove the unit by pulling the lower end of the unit towards you.

## CAUTION

When removing the unit, be careful not to damage the lock by applying excessive force. When installing and removing the unit, hold the upper and lower ends of the unit so that stress is not applied to the side (that surface with the slits) of the unit.

## CONNECTION TO FANUC I/O Link

## 8.1 GENERAL

The FANUC I/O Link is a serial interface which connects the CNC, cell controller, dispersed I/O, machine operator's panel, or Power Mate and transfers I/O signals (bit data) at high speeds between each device. The FANUC I/O Link regards one device as the master and other devices as slaves when more than one device is connected. Input signals from the slaves are sent to the master at specified intervals. Output signals from the master are also sent to the slaves at specified intervals.

## 8.2 CONNECTION

For the Series $0 i-\mathrm{C}$ and Series $0 i$ Mate-C, the interface connector for I/O Link (JD1A) is located on the unit main board.
In the I/O Link there are the master station and its slave stations. As the Series $0 i / 0 i$ Mate control unit, the master is connected to slaves such as a distributed I/O slave. The slaves are divided into groups, and up to 16 groups can be connected to one I/O Link. (For the Series 0i Mate, however, the number of I/O points is restricted.)
The I/O Link is connected in different ways depending on the types of units actually used and the I/O points. To connect the I/O Link, the assignment and addresses of the I/O signals have been made programmable with the PMC program. The maximum number of I/O points is 1024 .
The two connectors of the I/O Link are named JD1A and JD1B, and are common to all units (that have I/O Link function). A cable is always connected from JD1A of a unit to JD1B of the next unit. Although JD1A of the last unit is not used and left open, it need not be connected with a terminator.
The pin assignments of connectors JD1A and JD1B are common to all units on the I/O Link, and are illustrated on Subsec. 8.2.1. Use the figures when connecting the I/O Link irrespective of the type of unit.


Fig. 8.2 I/O Link connection diagram

Series $0 i$ Mate-C control unit

M.P.G.=Manual pulse generator

The following is an example in which two operator's panel I/O boards and one machine operator's panel are used.

## DI space map

| X4 | Operator's panel I/O |
| :--- | :--- |
| DI 48 points |  |

DO space map

| Y0 | Operator's panel I/O DO 32 points |
| :---: | :---: |
| Y1 |  |
| Y2 |  |
| Y3 |  |
| Y4 | Operator's panel I/O <br> DO 32 points |
| Y5 |  |
| Y6 |  |
| Y7 |  |
| Y8 | Machine operator's panel |
| Y9 |  |
| Y10 |  |
| Y11 |  |
| Y12 |  |
| Y13 |  |
| Y14 |  |
| Y15 |  |

## NOTE

1 Since readout from the manual pulse generator (X16 to X18) is directly performed by the CNC, only the above assignment must be performed by the PMC.
2 See Subsec. 9.3.8 for details on DO alarm detection (X19 and X35).
3 For the Series $0 i$ Mate, up to 240 DI points and up to 160 DO points can be used.

Series $0 i-\mathrm{C}$ control unit


| DI space map |  | DO space map |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| X0 | Built-in I/O DI 96 points | Y0 | Built-in I/O DO 64 points |
| X1 |  | Y1 |  |
| X2 |  | Y2 |  |
| X3 |  | Y3 |  |
| X4 |  | Y4 |  |
| X5 |  | Y5 |  |
| X6 |  | Y6 |  |
| X7 |  | Y7 |  |
| X8 |  | Y8 | External |
| X9 |  | Y9 | I/O |
| X10 |  | Y10 |  |
| X11 |  | Y11 |  |
| X12 | First MPG | Y12 |  |
| X13 | Second MPG | Y13 |  |
| X14 | Third MPG | Y14 |  |
| X15 | DO alarm detection | Y15 |  |
| X16 | External I/O | Y16 |  |
| X17 |  | Y17 |  |
| X18 |  | Y18 |  |
| X19 |  | Y19 |  |
| X20 |  | Y20 |  |
| - |  | - |  |
| - |  | $\bullet$ |  |
| - |  | - |  |
| - |  | - |  |

NOTE
1 Since readout from the manual pulse generator (X12 to X 14 ) is directly performed by the CNC, only the above assignment must be performed by the PMC.
2 See Subsec. 9.3.8 for details on DO alarm detection (X15).

### 8.2.1

## Connection of FANUC

 I/O Link by Electric
## Cable

Control unit or preceding slave unit

+5 V terminals are for an optical I/O Link adapter. They are not necessary when connecting with a metal cable.
A line for the +5 V terminal is not required when the Optical I/O Link Adapter is not used.

Cable wiring


Recommended Cable Material
A66L-0001-0284\#10P(\#28AWG $\times$ 10pair)

### 8.2.2 <br> Power Supply <br> Precautions

Take the following precautions about the power supply of a slave unit connected through the FANUC I/O Link.

- During power-up, supply +24 V when or before turning on the CNC.
- During power-down, stop supplying +24 V when or after turning off the CNC.
- When turning off a slave unit, be sure to turn off the other units connected through the same I/O Link.
These are general rules. Therefore, when additional rules are specified for each unit, be sure to observe them.


## CONNECTION OF I/O Link SLAVE DEVICES

## 9.1 <br> CONNECTION OF I/O <br> UNITS FOR $0 i$

### 9.1.1 General

For the Series $0 i-\mathrm{C}$, it is possible to use the $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ unit for $0 i$ having the same functions as the I/O card built into the Series $0 i-\mathrm{B}$ as machine interface I/O. The number of DI/DO points of the I/O unit for $0 i$ is 96 or 64 .
I/O Link is used to connect to controls. For the connection method, see Subsection 8.2.1.
For the I/O unit for $0 i$, it is necessary to perform I/O Link assignment.


## Built-in I/O assignment

DO signal reaction to a system alarm
DI space map

| X0 | DI 96 points |
| :---: | :---: |
| X1 |  |
| X2 |  |
| X3 |  |
| X4 |  |
| X5 |  |
| X6 |  |
| X7 |  |
| X8 |  |
| X9 |  |
| X10 |  |
| X11 |  |
| X12 | First MPG |
| X13 | Second MPG |
| X14 | Third MPG |
| X15 | DO alarm detection |

Module name: CM16I

## NOTE

1 Since readout from a manual pulse generator (X12 to X14) is directly performed by the CNC, only the above assignment must be performed by the PMC.
2 See Chapter 8 for details on DO alarm detection (X15).

If the number of DI/DO points is not sufficient, external I/O units such as the dispersed I/O can be added using the FANUC I/O Link.
A MIL-compatible ribbon cable connector is used as the interface connector of the I/O unit for $0 i$ to simplify connection to the connector panel.
The connector can also be used for the Series 0i-Mate.

If a system alarm occurs in a CNC using this I/O module, or if I/O Link communication between the CNC and operator's panel I/O module fails, all the DO signals of the I/O module are turned off. Therefore, due care must be taken when setting up the machine sequence. Also, the same phenomenon occurs if the power of the CNC or the I/O module is turned off.

### 9.1.2 <br> Cautions

## DI Signals and Receivers

DO Signals and Drivers

The following cautions must be observed when using I/O signal receivers and drivers for the machine interface.

DI signals are basically of the sink type (a type that drains energy). Some DI signals, however, can be set to either sink type or source type (a type that supplies energy). See the description of the I/O board in the following section for details.
A common signal is provided for selectable receivers. Whether the common signal is connected to 0 V or 24 V determines whether a DI signal is of sink or source type.
A source type DI signal is undesirable from the viewpoint of safety, however, because if the input signal line is grounded, it will be latched in the same state as that existing when the contact is closed. It is recommended that all DI signals be set to sink type.
Always connect the common signal to either 0 or 24 V ; do not leave it open.

The driver of DO signals is source type (a type that supplies energy, non-insulating).
If a system alarm occurs in a control unit of the Series $0 i$, all I/O board drivers are turned off. Keep this in mind when setting up a machine sequence.
The same situation can occur if the power to the control unit is turned off independently.

### 9.1.3

## Cable for Power

 Supply to Control UnitSupply power to the I/O unit for $0 i$ from external resouce.

| I/O unit for $0 i$ |  | External power |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CP1 |  |  |
| 1 | +24V | 24VDC stabilized |
| 2 | OV | power |
|  |  |  |
| Cable |  |  |
| CP1AMP Japan$1-178288-3$ (housing)$1-175218-5$ (Contact) |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| $\begin{array}{r} +24 \mathrm{~V}(1) \\ 0 \mathrm{~V}(2) \end{array}$ |  | Select a source that meets the external power terminal. |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| Recommended cable : A02B-0124-K830 (5m) (Crimp terminal of size M3 is available on the external power side) |  |  |

Part of the 24 VDC power input to CP1 can be taken out from CP2 by branching. CP2 should be connected as shown below. In this case, the rating of the external 24 VDC power supplied to CP1 must be the sum of the power consumed within the control unit and that supplied to external equipment via CP2. The maximum capacity of power that can be obtained from a branch is 1.0 A .


## NOTE

Do not interrupt +24 V supplied to this connector during operation. Otherwise, an alarm about communication with the CNC is issued.
A voltage of +24 V must not be supplied after power-on of the CNC and +24 V must not be interrupted before power-off of the CNC. When powering off the CNC body, be sure to power off the $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ unit for $0 i$.

### 9.1.4

## Connector Pin

## Arrangement

| CB104 |  |  | CB105 |  |  | CB106 |  |  | CB107 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| HIROSE 50PIN |  |  | HIROSE 50PIN |  |  | HIROSE 50PIN |  |  | HIROSE 50PIN |  |  |
|  | A | B |  | A | B |  | A | B |  | A | B |
| 01 | OV | +24V | 01 | OV | +24V | 01 | OV | +24V | 01 | OV | +24V |
| 02 | Xm+0.0 | Xm+0.1 | 02 | Xm+3.0 | Xm+3.1 | 02 | Xm+4.0 | Xm+4.1 | 02 | Xm+7.0 | Xm+7.1 |
| 03 | Xm+0.2 | Xm+0.3 | 03 | Xm+3.2 | Xm+3.3 | 03 | Xm+4.2 | Xm+4.3 | 03 | Xm+7.2 | Xm+7.3 |
| 04 | Xm+0.4 | Xm+0.5 | 04 | Xm+3.4 | Xm+3.5 | 04 | Xm+4.4 | Xm+4.5 | 04 | Xm+7.4 | Xm+7.5 |
| 05 | Xm+0.6 | Xm+0.7 | 05 | Xm+3.6 | Xm+3.7 | 05 | Xm+4.6 | Xm+4.7 | 05 | Xm+7.6 | Xm+7.7 |
| 06 | Xm+1.0 | Xm+1.1 | 06 | Xm+8.0 | Xm+8.1 | 06 | Xm+5.0 | Xm+5.1 | 06 | Xm+10.0 | Xm+10.1 |
| 07 | Xm+1.2 | Xm+1.3 | 07 | Xm+8.2 | Xm+8.3 | 07 | Xm+5.2 | Xm+5.3 | 07 | Xm+10.2 | Xm+10.3 |
| 08 | Xm+1.4 | Xm+1.5 | 08 | Xm+8.4 | Xm+8.5 | 08 | Xm+5.4 | Xm+5.5 | 08 | Xm+10.4 | Xm+10.5 |
| 09 | Xm+1.6 | Xm+1.7 | 09 | Xm+8.6 | Xm+8.7 | 09 | Xm+5.6 | Xm+5.7 | 09 | Xm+10.6 | Xm+10.7 |
| 10 | Xm+2.0 | Xm+2.1 | 10 | Xm+9.0 | Xm+9.1 | 10 | Xm+6.0 | Xm+6.1 | 10 | Xm+11.0 | Xm+11.1 |
| 11 | Xm+2.2 | Xm+2.3 | 11 | Xm+9.2 | Xm+9.3 | 11 | Xm+6.2 | Xm+6.3 | 11 | Xm+11.2 | Xm+11.3 |
| 12 | Xm+2.4 | Xm+2.5 | 12 | Xm+9.4 | Xm+9.5 | 12 | Xm+6.4 | Xm+6.5 | 12 | Xm+11.4 | Xm+11.5 |
| 13 | Xm+2.6 | Xm+2.7 | 13 | Xm+9.6 | Xm+9.7 | 13 | Xm+6.6 | Xm+6.7 | 13 | Xm+11.6 | Xm+11.7 |
| 14 |  |  | 14 |  |  | 14 | COM4 |  | 14 |  |  |
| 15 |  |  | 15 |  |  | 15 |  |  | 15 |  |  |
| 16 | Yn+0.0 | Yn+0.1 | 16 | Yn+2.0 | Yn+2.1 | 16 | Yn+4.0 | Yn+4.1 | 16 | Yn+6.0 | Yn+6.1 |
| 17 | $Y \mathrm{n}+0.2$ | Yn+0.3 | 17 | Yn+2.2 | Yn+2.3 | 17 | Yn+4.2 | Yn+4.3 | 17 | Yn+6.2 | Yn+6.3 |
| 18 | Yn+0.4 | $Y \mathrm{n}+0.5$ | 18 | Yn+2.4 | Yn+2.5 | 18 | Yn+4.4 | Yn+4.5 | 18 | Yn+6.4 | Yn+6.5 |
| 19 | Yn+0.6 | Yn+0.7 | 19 | Yn+2.6 | Yn+2.7 | 19 | Yn+4.6 | Yn+4.7 | 19 | Yn+6.6 | Yn+6.7 |
| 20 | Yn+1.0 | Yn+1.1 | 20 | Yn+3.0 | Yn+3.1 | 20 | Yn+5.0 | Yn+5.1 | 20 | Yn+7.0 | Yn+7.1 |
| 21 | Yn+1.2 | Yn+1.3 | 21 | Yn+3.2 | Yn+3.3 | 21 | Yn+5.2 | Yn+5.3 | 21 | $Y \mathrm{Y}+7.2$ | $Y \mathrm{Y}+7.3$ |
| 22 | Yn+1.4 | $Y n+1.5$ | 22 | Yn+3.4 | $Y \mathrm{n}+3.5$ | 22 | Yn+5.4 | $Y \mathrm{n}+5.5$ | 22 | $Y \mathrm{n}+7.4$ | $Y n+7.5$ |
| 23 | Yn+1.6 | Yn+1.7 | 23 | Yn+3.6 | Yn+3.7 | 23 | Yn+5.6 | Yn+5.7 | 23 | Yn+7.6 | Yn+7.7 |
| 24 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 24 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 24 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 24 | DOCOM | DOCOM |
| 25 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 25 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 25 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 25 | DOCOM | DOCOM |

## NOTE

1 The B01 +24 V pins of the connectors (CB104, CB105, CB106, and CB107) are used for the DI input signals, and which output 24 VDC.
Do not connect +24 V of an external power supply to these pins.
2 Each DOCOM is connected in the printer board. If using the DO signal (Y) of a connector, be sure to input 24 VDC to each pin of the DOCOM of that connector.

- Connector recommended for use on the cable side :

HIF3BB-50D-2.54R (Hirose) : Refer to Appendix A.

### 9.1.5

## Connecting DI/DO

For example, connecting DI




For address $\mathrm{Xm}+4$, either a source or sink type (with a $0-$ or $24-\mathrm{V}$ common voltage) can be selected. COM4 must be connected to either 24 or 0 V ; never leave it open. From the viewpoint of safety standards, it is recommended that a sink type signal be used. The above diagram shows an example in which the signal is of sink type (with a $24-\mathrm{V}$ common voltage).




For example, connecting DO




9.1.6

I/O Signal
Requirements and External Power Supply for DO

Requirements for DI signals DO output drive

Contact capacity :
30 VDC 16 mA or more
Leakage current between contact points for an open circuit : 1 mA or less (at 26.4 V )
Voltage drop between contact points for a closed circuit : 2 V or less (including the voltage drop in the cables)

Maximum load current when turned on :
200 mA or less, including momentary surges (The maximum current for one DOCOM (power supply) pin must be 0.7 A or less.)
Saturation voltage when turned on : 1.0 V max when the load current is 200 mA

Dielectric strength :
$24 \mathrm{~V}+20 \%$ or less, including momentary surges
Leakage current when turned off : $100 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ or less

External power Power supply voltage : supply for DO
$24 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$

Power supply current :
(Sum of maximum load current including momentary surges + 100 mA ) or more

Power-on sequence :
Turn on the external power supply at the same time or before turning on the control unit.
Power-off sequence :
Turn off the external power supply at the same time or after turning off the control unit.

## CAUTION

1 Never use the following DO parallel connection.


## CAUTION

2 When using a dark lighting resistor as shown in the following figure, use a leakage-proof diode.


## NOTE

Output signal driver
Each of the output signal driver devices used on this I/O board outputs eight signals.
A driver device monitors the current of each output signal. If it detects an overcurrent on an output, it turns off the output. Once an overcurrent causes an output to turn off, the overcurrent is no longer present. Then, the output is turned on again. In ground-fault or overload conditions, outputs may turn on and off alternately. This phenomenon also occurs when a load with a high surge current is connected.
Each driver device contains an overheat detector circuit. If an overcurrent is observed on an output continuously because of a ground-fault or similar reason and the temperature in the device rises, the overheat detector circuit turns off all eight outputs. The output-off state is maintained. This state can be released by logically turning off then on again the outputs after the internal temperature of the device drops to a specified level. This state can also be released by turning off the system power supply.
The output signals of the driver devices are assigned the following addresses:

Device \#0: $\mathrm{Yn}+0.0$ to $\mathrm{Yn}+0.7$
Device \#1: $Y n+1.0$ to $Y n+1.7$
Device \#2: $Y n+2.0$ to $Y n+2.7$
Device \#3: $Y n+3.0$ to $Y n+3.7$
Device \#4: $Y n+4.0$ to $Y n+4.7$
Device \#5: $Y n+5.0$ to $Y n+5.7$
Device \#6: $Y n+6.0$ to $Y n+6.7$
Device \#7: $Y n+7.0$ to $Y n+7.7$
If $N C$ diagnosis shows that an output is on but the output is actually not turned on, an overload on that output or another output in the same device may have turned off the eight outputs of that device. In such a case, turn off the system power supply and remove the cause of the overload.

9.1.7

Connecting the Manual Pulse Generator

Manual pulse generators are used to manually move an axis in the handle feed mode.


Manual Pulse Generator (No.3)

## Connection to Manual

## Pulse Generators

|  |  |  |  | Manual Pulse Generator |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| I/O unit for Oi JA3B (PCR-EV20MDT) |  |  |  | Manual Pulse Generator unit \#1 (M3 screw terminal) |  |  |  |
| 1 | HA1 | 11 | OV | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| 2 | HB1 | 12 | OV | +5V | OV | HA1 | HB1 |
| 3 | HA2 | 13 | OV | Manual Pulse Generator unit \#2 |  |  |  |
| 4 | HB2 | 14 | OV | (M3 screw terminal) |  |  |  |
| 5 | HA3 | 15 | OV | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| 6 | HB3 | 16 | OV | +5V | 0V | HA2 | HB2 |
| 7 |  | 17 | $+5 \mathrm{~V}$ | Manual Pulse Generator unit \#3 (M3 screw terminal) |  |  |  |
| 8 |  | 18 | $+5 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |  |  |  |
| 9 | $+5 \mathrm{~V}$ | 19 | $+5 \mathrm{~V}$ | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| 10 | +5V | 20 | $+5 \mathrm{~V}$ | +5V | OV | HA3 | HB3 |



Cable Length When Manual Pulse Generator is Used

## Manual Handle Allocation Function

Connection example

Manual pulse generators are supplied with 5 VDC power the same as pulse coders. The drop in voltage due to cable resistance must not exceed 0.2 V (on 0 V and 5 V lines in total).
$0.2 \geqq \frac{0.1 \times R \times 2 \mathrm{~L}}{\mathrm{~m}}$

Therefore,
where 0.1 :Power supply current for the manual pulse generator $=0.1 \mathrm{~A}$
$R$ : Wire resistance per unit length $[\Omega / \mathrm{m}]$
m : Number of $0-\mathrm{V}$ wires (= number of $5-\mathrm{V}$ wires)
L : Cable length [m]
$L \leqq \frac{m}{R}$
Example: When cable A66L-0001-0286 is used
This cable consists of three pairs of signal lines and six power wires (20/0.18, $0.0394 \Omega / \mathrm{m}$ ).
When these three cables are used for 0 V and 5 V lines, the cable length is:

$$
\mathrm{L} \leqq \frac{3}{0.0394}=76.75[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

The maximum distance is, however, 50 m for the transmission of a pulse signal from the manual pulse generator. The cable length is, therefore, up to 50 m .
The maximum cable length is 38.37 m when using the two manual pulse generators, or 25.58 m when using the three generators.

Usually, if two or more units equipped with a manual handle interface are connected with an I/O LINK, the manual handle interface of the first unit connected to the I/O LINK will be automatically enabled.
The use of this function enables the manual handle interfaces of the second and subsequent units. By setting bit 1 of parameter No. 7105, the manual handles associated with the X addresses set in parameters Nos. 12305 to 12307 can be allocated as the first, second, and third manual handles, respectively.
Up to three manual handles can be allocated. For the Series $0 i$ Mate-TC, however, up to two manual handles can be allocated.

Connection example in which more than one unit equipped with a manual handle interface is connected with an I/O LINK


## Parameter



## [Unit of data] Bit

HDX The manual handles connected with an I/O LINK are:
0 : Automatically allocated in the order in which they are connected to the I/O LINK.
1: Allocated to the X signal addresses set in the appropriate parameters.

[Unit of data] Word
[Valid data range] 0 to 127
Set the addresses of the X signals used with the respective manual handles.
These parameters are effective when HDX, bit 1 of parameter No. 7105, is 1. The manual handles will not operate if the addresses of the manual handles of the units connected with the I/O LINK are not set correctly.

## 9.2 <br> CONNECTION TO <br> MACHINE <br> OPERATOR'S PANEL

### 9.2.1

Overview

This machine operator's panel is connected with CNC by I/O Link, which is composed with the following 2 operator's panels.


Be sure to see Subsection 9.2.9, for notes on using the keyboard.

### 9.2.2

## Total Connection

Diagram


## NOTE

1 Usually, CNC is only possible to use the MPG interface on this operator's panel. If CNC uses some I/O unit having MPG interface (ex. Dispersion type I/O module for panel) and this operator's panel, the MPG interface nearest the CNC is only available on the I/O Link connection.
To enable the MPG interface of the second or later unit, use the manual handle assignment function described in Subsection 9.1.7.
2 MPG cannot be connected with either of JA3 and JA58.

### 9.2.3

## Connections

### 9.2.3.1 <br> Pin assignment

CA64 (Power source)

| 3 |  | 2 | 0 V | 1 | +24 V |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 6 |  | 5 | 0 V | 4 | +24 V |

Recommended connector for cable:
Housing: AMP 1-178288-3 (3 pins type)
Contact: AMP 1-175218-5
CM67 (ON/OFF, Program protect, ESP)

| A01 | EON | B01 | EOFF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A02 | COM1 | B02 | COM2 |
| A03 | Xm+1.4 | B03 | KEYCOM |
| A04 | *ESP | B04 | ESPCM1 |
| A05 | TR1 | B05 | TR2 |

Recommended connector for cable:
Housing: AMP 178289-5
Contact: AMP 1-175218-5
CM65 (General-purpose DI)

| A01 |  | B01 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A02 |  | B02 | $X m+0.5$ |
| A03 | Xm+0.1 | B03 | $X m+0.3$ |
| A04 | +24 V | B04 | Xm+0.4 |
| A05 | Xm+0.2 | B05 | $X m+0.0$ |

Recommended connector for cable: Hirose electric: HIF3BA-10D-2.54R
CM68 (General-purpose DI/DO)

| A01 | +24 V | B01 | $\mathrm{Xm}+1.5$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A02 | $\mathrm{Xm}+1.6$ | B02 | $\mathrm{Xm}+1.7$ |
| A03 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.0$ | B03 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.1$ |
| A04 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.2$ | B04 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.3$ |
| A05 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.4$ | B05 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.5$ |
| A06 | TR3 | B06 | TR4 |
| A07 | TR5 | B07 | TR6 |
| A08 | $\mathrm{Yn}+5.3$ | B08 | $\mathrm{Yn}+5.7$ |
| A09 | Yn+6.3 | B08 | $\mathrm{Yn}+6.7$ |
| A10 | DOCOM | B10 | $0 V$ |

Recommended connector for cable:
Housing: AMP 178289-8
Contact: AMP 1-175218-5

CA65 (Power magnetic cabinet)

| A01 | EON | B01 | EOFF |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A02 | COM1 | B02 | COM2 |
| A03 | *ESP | B03 | ESPCM1 |
| A04 | TR1 | B04 | TR2 |
| A05 | TR3 | B05 | TR4 |
| A06 | TR5 | B06 | TR6 |
| A07 | TR7 | B07 | TR8 |
| A08 |  | B08 |  |
| A09 |  | B08 |  |
| A10 |  | B10 |  |

Recommended connector for cable: Hirose electric: HIF3BA-20D-2.54R

CM66 (General-purpose DI)

| A01 |  | B01 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A02 |  | B02 | $X m+1.3$ |
| A03 | $X m+0.7$ | B03 | $X m+1.1$ |
| A04 | $+24 V$ | B04 | $X m+1.2$ |
| A05 | Xm+1.0 | B05 | $X m+0.6$ |

Recommended connector for cable: Hirose electric: HIF3BA-10D-2.54R

CM69 (General-purpose DI/DO)

| A01 | +24 V | B01 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.6$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A02 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.7$ | B02 | $\mathrm{Xm}+3.0$ |
| A03 | $\mathrm{Xm}+3.1$ | B03 | $\mathrm{Xm}+3.2$ |
| A04 | $\mathrm{Xm}+3.3$ | B04 | $\mathrm{Xm}+3.4$ |
| A05 | $\mathrm{Xm}+3.5$ | B05 | $\mathrm{Xm}+3.6$ |
| A06 | $\mathrm{Xm}+3.7$ | B06 | DICOM |
| A07 | TR7 | B07 | TR8 |
| A08 | $\mathrm{Yn}+7.3$ | B08 | $\mathrm{Yn}+7.4$ |
| A09 | $\mathrm{Yn}+7.5$ | B08 | $\mathrm{Yn}+7.6$ |
| A10 | DOCOM | B10 | 0 V |

Recommended connector for cable: Housing: AMP 178289-8 Contact: AMP 1-175218-5

## NOTE

1 Input/output Pins shaded by are in pairs. Only one in each pair is usable.
2 Pins shaded by $\square$ are those for forwarding signals. Pins with the same name are connected directly to one another.

JA3 (Manual pulse generator)

| 1 | HA1 | 11 |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | HB1 | 12 | 0 V |
| 3 | HA2 | 13 |  |
| 4 | HB2 | 14 | 0 V |
| 5 | HA3 | 15 |  |
| 6 | HB3 | 16 | 0 V |
| 7 |  | 17 |  |
| 8 |  | 18 | +5 V |
| 9 | +5 V | 19 |  |
| 10 |  | 20 | +5 V |

JA58 (Pendant type manual pulse generator)

| 1 | HA1 | 11 | $\mathrm{Xm}+1.5$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | HB 1 | 12 | 0 V |
| 3 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.2$ | 13 | $\mathrm{Xm}+1.6$ |
| 4 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.3$ | 14 | 0 V |
| 5 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.4$ | 15 | $\mathrm{Xm}+1.7$ |
| 6 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.5$ | 16 | 0 V |
| 7 | $\mathrm{Yn}+5.3$ | 17 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.0$ |
| 8 | $\mathrm{Xm}+2.1$ | 18 | +5 V |
| 9 | +5 V | 19 | +24 V |
| 10 | +24 V | 20 | +5 V |

Recommended connector for cable of JA3 and JA58
When the depth of the operator's panel is 60 mm min .
Recommended connector for cable:
Hirose electric: FI30-20S (Connector)
FI-20-CV7 (Case)
When the depth of the operator's panel is 80 mm min .
Recommended connector for cable of JA3:
Hirose electric: FI40B-2015S (Connector)
FI-20-CV (Case)
Recommended connector for cable of JA58:
Honda: PCR-E20FA (Connector)
PCR-V20LA (Case)
Hirose electric: FI30-20S (Connector)
FI-20-CV2 (Case)
Fujitsu: FCN-247J020-G/E (Connector)
FCN-240C020-Y/S (Case)
Molex: 52622-2011 (Connector)
52624-2015 (Case)

### 9.2.3.2 <br> Power supply connection

To the connector CA64 (IN), shown in the figure below, supply the power necessary for this operator's panel to operate and the power necessary for general-purpose DI. To facilitate power branching, the powers supplied to CA64 (IN) are output directly to CA64 (OUT). If power branching is required, use CA64 (OUT).


## NOTE

1 Both connectors CA64 (IN) and CA64 (OUT) are same specification. And there is not indication of (IN) and (OUT) on the PCB.
2 Power supply for the operator's panel must not turn off at operation. If +24 V is turned off at operation, CNC happen to get system alarm (Communication alarm between CNC and operator's panel). +24 V for operator's panel must be supplied before or same time CNC power on.

### 9.2.3.3 <br> I/O link connection

Control unit or preceding slave unit
Main panel B


Recommendedconnector for cable of JD1A and JD1B on Main panel B When the depth of the operator's panel is 60 mm min. Recommended connector for cable: Hirose electric FI40B-2015S(Connector) FI-20-CV (Case)
When the depth of the operator's panel is 80 mm min.
Recommended connector for cable:
Honda: PCR-E20FA (Connector)
PCR-V20LA (Case)
Hirose electric: FI30-20S(Connector)
FI-20-CV2 (Case)
Fujitsu: FCN-247J020-G/E(Connector) FCN-240C020-Y/S(Case)
Molex: 52622-2011 (Connector) 52624-2015(Case)
+5 V terminals are for an optical I/O Link adapter. They are not necessary when connecting with a metal cable.
If not using the optical I/O link adapter, do not connect the +5 V pin.


### 9.2.3.4 <br> Emergency stop signal connection

A signal generated by the emergency stop switch on the machine operator's panel can be sent to the power magnetic cabinet. (This signal cannot be sent to the FANUC I/O Link.)
When MTB uses the Sub panel B1, wiring to the emergency stop switch is contained in the Sub panel.

9.2.3.5

Power ON/OFF control signal connection

Signal generated by the power ON/OFF control switches on the machine operator's panel can be sent to the power magnetic cabinet. (This signal cannot be sent to the FANUC I/O Link.)
Sub panel B1 is not included Emergency stop button.


### 9.2.3.6 <br> General-purpose <br> DI connection




## NOTE

$1 \mathrm{Xm}+3.0$ to 3.7 have a common line that is possible to select the source/sink type. If DICOM (CM69-B06pin) is connected to +24 V , the DI signal logic is negative. But in this connection, if the DI signal wires happen to drop the ground level, the status of the DI signal is same as the DI signal is "ON". From the safety viewpoint, DICOM should be connected OV.
$2 X m+0.0$ to $0.7, X m+1.0$ to 1.7 and $X m+2.0$ to 0.7 common lines are fixed. So, if these DI pins in this address open, the status of these one stay " 0 ". And in case of $\mathrm{Xm}+3.0$ to 3.7 which have a selectable common line, if the DICOM(CM69-B06pin) is connected to 0 V and these DI pins open, the status of these one stay " 0 ". And if the DICOM are connected to +24 V and these DI pins open, the status of these one stay " 1 ". And if the DICOM is not connected to 0 V or +24 V and these DI pins open, the status of these one don't care.

### 9.2.3.7 <br> General-purpose <br> DO signal



### 9.2.3.8 <br> Manual pulse generator connection

| Main panel $\mathrm{A} / \mathrm{B} / \mathrm{A} 1 / \mathrm{B} 1$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| JA3 |  |  |  |  | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
|  |  |  |  |  | +5V | 0V | HA1 | HB1 |
| 1 | HA1 | 11 |  | $\ggg$ | Manual pulse generator \# 1 (M3 Screw) |  |  |  |
| 2 | HB1 | 12 | 0V |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3 | HA2 | 13 |  |  | 3 | 4 | 5 |  |
| 4 | HB2 | 14 | OV |  | +5V | 0V | HA1 | HB1 |
| 5 | HA3 | 15 |  |  | Manual pulse generator \# 2 (M3 Screw) |  |  |  |
| 6 | HB3 | 16 | OV |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7 |  | 17 |  |  | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| 8 |  | 18 | +5V |  | +5V | 0V | HA1 | HB1 |
| 9 | +5V | 19 |  |  | Manual pulse generator \# 3 (M3 Screw) |  |  |  |
| 10 |  | 20 | +5V |  |  |  |  |  |



When the depth of the operator's panel is 80 mm min .
Recommended wire material : A66L-0001-0286(\#20AWGx6+\#24AWGx3pairs)
Recommended connector : A02B-0120-K303(Including below connector and case)
(Connector : HIROSE FI40B-2015S Soldering type)
(Case : HIROSE FI-20-CV)
Recommended cable: A02B-0120-K841(7m) (MPG 3 units)
A02B-0120-K848(7m) (MPG 2 units)
A02B-0120-K847(7m) (MPG 1 unit)
(These cables don't include the wiring part in the figure.)
When the depth of the operator's panel is 60 mm min.
Recommended wire material : A66L-0001-0284\#10P(\#28AWGx10pairs)
Recommended connector : A02B-0236-K302(Including below connector and case)
(Connector : HIROSE FI30-20S Stand wire press-mount type)
(Case : HIROSE FI-20-CV7)

## NOTE

For an explanation of the length of the cable for the manual pulse generator, see Subsection 9.1.7.

### 9.2.3.9

When a pendant-type manual pulse generator

| Main panel $\mathrm{A} / \mathrm{B} / \mathrm{A} 1 / \mathrm{B} 1$ |  |  |  |  | Pendant-type manual pulse generator |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| JA58 |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1 | HA1 | 11 | Xm+1.5 |  | (1) (1) |
| 2 | HB1 | 12 | 0 V |  | Axis Multiplier |
| 3 | Xm+2.2 | 13 | Xm+1.6 |  | Axis ${ }^{\text {Selection setting }}$ |
| 4 | Xm+2.3 | 14 | OV | $\rangle>$ | Selection seting |
| 5 | Xm+2.4 | 15 | Xm+1.7 | $\gg$ | (o) |
| 6 | Xm+2.5 | 16 | OV |  | ( ) |
| 7 | Yn+5.3 | 17 | Xm+2.0 |  | ) |
| 8 | Xm+2.1 | 18 | $+5 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |  |
| 9 | +5V | 19 | +24V |  |  |
| 10 | +24V | 20 | +5V |  |  |

## NOTE

1 When Xm+1.5 to Xm+2.5 of connector JA58 are allocated as the Dis used for the axis selection and multiplier setting, $X m+1.5$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+2.5$ of connector CM68 cannot be used.
2 One DO is available for the manual pulse generator side at the user's direction. When this is used, $\mathrm{Yn}+5.3$ of CM 68 cannot be used, as in the case for Dls above.

### 9.2.3.10

## Connector (on the cable side) specifications

| Connector | Maker Specification |  | Order specifi cation |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| JD1A, JD1B, <br> JA3, JA58 <br> (Operators panel depth $=60 \mathrm{mmmin}$.) | Stand wire pressmount type | Hirose <br> FI30-20S(Connector) <br> FI-20-CV7 (Case) | A02B-0236-K302 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { JD1A, JD1B, } \\ & \text { JA58 } \\ & \text { (Operators panel } \\ & \text { depth=80mmmin.) } \end{aligned}$ | Soldering type | Honda <br> PCR-E20FS (Connector) <br> PCR-V20LA (Case) <br> Hirose <br> FI40B-20S(Connector) <br> FI-20-CV2 (Case) | A02B-0120-K301 |
|  | Stand wire pressmount type | Honda <br> PCR-E20FA (Connector) <br> PCR-V20LA (Case) <br> Hirose <br> FI30-20S(Connector) <br> FI-20-CV2 (Case) | A02B-0120-K302 |
| JA3 <br> (Operators panel depth $=80 \mathrm{mmmin}$.) | Soldering type | Hirose <br> FI40B-2015S(Connector) <br> FI-20-CV (Case) | A02B-0120-K303 |
| CA64 (IN), <br> CA64 (OUT) | AMP <br> 1-178288-3(Housing) <br> 1-175218-5(Contact) |  | A02B-0120-K324 |
| CM67 | AMP <br> 178289-5(Housing) <br> 1-175218-5(Contact) |  | A02B-0236-K312 |
| CM68, CM69 | AMP <br> 178289-8(Housing) <br> 1-175218-5(Contact) |  | A02B-0236-K313 |
| CM65, CM66 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Hirose } \\ & \text { HIF3BA-10D-2.54R } \end{aligned}$ |  | A02B-0236-K314 |
| CA65 | Hirose <br> HIF3BA-20D-2.54R |  | A02B-0120-K343 |
| CA55 | JAV <br> LY10-DC10(Housing) <br> LY10-C2-3 (Contact) |  | A02B-0236-K303 |

### 9.2.4 <br> I/O Address

9.2.4.1

Keyboard of main panel

I/O address of Keyswitches and LED on the keyboard of Main panel B are as follows.

| Key/LED BIT | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+4 / \mathrm{Yn}+0$ | B4 | B3 | B2 | B1 | A4 | A3 | A2 | A1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+5 / \mathrm{Yn}+1$ | D4 | D3 | D2 | D1 | D4 | C3 | C2 | C1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+6 / Y n+2$ | A8 | A7 | A6 | A5 | E4 | E3 | E2 | E1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm+7/Yn+3}$ | C8 | C7 | C6 | C5 | B8 | B7 | B6 | B5 |
| $X m+8 / Y n+4$ | E8 | E7 | E6 | E5 | D8 | D7 | D6 | D5 |
| $X m+9 / Y n+5$ |  | B11 | B10 | B9 |  | A11 | A10 | A9 |
| $X m+10 / Y n+6$ |  | D11 | D10 | D9 |  | C11 | C10 | C9 |
| $X m+11 / Y n+7$ |  |  |  |  |  | E11 | E10 | E9 |

Keyswitches/LED position

9.2.4.2

Table of gray code output is as follows when the Sub panel B1 is used Override signals

Rotary switch (SA1)

| $\%$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 95 | 100 | 105 | 110 | 120 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.0$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.1$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.2$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.3$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.4$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.5$ | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

## NOTE

$X m+0.5$ is a parity bit.

Rotary switch (SA2)

| $\%$ | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $X m+0.6$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| $X m+0.7$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| $X m+1.0$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $X m+1.1$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| $X m+1.2$ | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| $X m+1.3$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

## NOTE

$X m+1.2$ is a parity bit.

### 9.2.5 I/O address map is as follows. I/O Mapping

| DI map |  | DO map |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Xm+0 |  | Yn+0 |  |
| Xm+1 | General-purpose | Yn+1 |  |
| Xm+2 |  | Yn+2 | Keyboard of |
| Xm+3 |  | Yn+3 | Main Panel |
| Xm+4 | Keyboard of Main panel (Keyswitches) | Yn+4 | Includegeneral- |
| Xm+5 |  | Yn+5 | Purpose DO |
| Xm+6 |  | Yn+6 |  |
| Xm+7 |  | Yn+7 |  |
| Xm+8 |  |  |  |
| Xm+9 |  |  |  |
| Xm+10 |  |  |  |
| Xm+11 |  |  |  |
| Xm+12 (1st MPG) | MPG |  |  |
| Xm+13 (2nd MPG) |  |  |  |
| Xm+14 (3rd MPG) |  |  |  |
| Xm+15 | Reserve |  |  |

### 9.2.6 <br> Connector Locations of Main Panel B



### 9.2.7

Specifications

### 9.2.7.1

## Environmental

 requirement| Temperature <br> Around a unit | At operation <br> Storing or transporting $\quad 0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $58^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| Temperature variance | Max. $1.1^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{min}$ |
| Humidity | Normally <br> Short time (Within one month) $\quad$$75 \%$ or less (Relative humidity) <br> $95 \%$ or less (Relative humidity) <br> Vibration <br> Operating $\quad 0.5 \mathrm{G}$ or less <br> AtmosphereNormal FA atmosphere(Consult us when using the system under environments with higher <br> degree of dust, coolant, or organic solution.) |

### 9.2.7.2

## Order specification

| Name | Specification | Note |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Machine operator's panel Main panel B | A02B-0236-C231 | Symbol key |
| Machine operators panel Main panel B1 | A02B-0236-C241 | English key |
| Machine operator's panel Sub panel A | A02B-0236-C232 |  |
| Machine operator's panel Sub panel B1 | A02B-0236-C235 |  |
| Set of transparent key tops | A02B-0236-K170 | 55 transparent key tops |
| Set of blank key tops | A02B-0236-K171 | 55 key tops with no symbols printed |
| Set of symbolic key tops | A02B-0236-K172 | 34 symbol key tops +21 blank key tops |
| Fuse(Spare part) | A03B-0815-K001 | 1 A |

### 9.2.7.3

Main panel B, B1
specification

| Item | Specification | Note |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| General-purpose DI points | 32 points | 24 VDC type input |
| General-purpose DO points | 8 points | 24VDC type output, non-insulating |
| Keyswitches of Machine operator's panel | 55 keys | Matrix DI |
| LED | Color : Green | Max. 3 units |
| MPG interface | FANUC I/O Link connection to all keyswitches, Matrix DO |  |
| Interface to CNC | Max. 16 modules or total points max. <br> $1024 / 1024$ will be available. |  |

### 9.2.7.4

Sub panel A, B1 specification

| Item | Sub panel specification |  | Note |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
|  | A | B |  |
| Override rotary switch | 2 | 2 | 5 bit Gray code output (with a parity bit) |
| Emergency stop switch | 1 | 1 | Number of Contact $: 4$ (Contact a $\times 2$, <br> Contact $\mathrm{b} \times 2)$ <br> M3.5 Screw |
| Program protect key |  | 1 |  |
| ON/OFF switch | ON/OFF | - |  |

### 9.2.7.5

## Power supply

 specification| Voltage | Capacity | Note |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| 24VDC $\pm 10 \%$ (from Power connector <br> CA64, including momentary values) <br> Momentary values and ripples are also <br> included in $\pm 10 \%$. | 0.4 A | Including all DI consumption |

### 9.2.7.6

General-purpose DI signal definition

| Capacity | 30VDC, 16 mA or more |
| :--- | :--- |
| Interconnect leakage current in closed circuit | 1 mA or less (at 26.4 V ) |
| Interconnect voltage drop in closed circuit | 2 V or less (including the voltage drop in the cables) |
| Delay time | Receiver delay : Max. 2ms <br> Need to consider about the serial communication (I/O Link) delay <br> between CNC and operator's panel2ms (MAX) + Scan cycle of ladder <br> (Scan cycle is different each CNCs). |

### 9.2.7.7

General-purpose DO signal definition

| Maximum load current in ON state | 200 mA or less (including momentary values) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Saturation voltage in ON state | Max. 1V (When load current is 200 mA ) |
| Withstand voltage | $24 \mathrm{~V} \pm 20 \%$ or less (including momentary values) |
| Leakage current in OFF state | $20 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ or less |
| Delay time | Driver delay : Max. $50 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ <br> Need to consider about the serial communication (I/O Link) delay <br> between CNC and operator's panel 2 ms (MAX)+Scan cycle of ladder <br> (Scan cycle is different each CNCs). |

### 9.2.8

Key Symbol Indication
on Machine Operator's

## Panel

### 9.2.8. <br> Meaning of key symbols

| Symbol <br> indication | AUTO mode selection signal; Sets automatic operation <br> mode. |
| :--- | :--- |


| Symbol <br> indication | Program restart; A program may be restart at a block by <br> specifying the sequence number of the block, after <br> automatic operation is stopped because of a broken tool <br> or for holidays. |
| :--- | :--- | | Dryrun; Sets the axis feedrate to the jog feedrate instead |
| :--- |
| of a programmed feedrate when automatic operation is |
| performed by setting this button to on. This function is |
| used to check only the movement of the tool when no |
| workpiece is mounted. |

### 9.2.8.2 <br> Detachable key top

Keyboard of main panel B has 55 keys. All key tops are detachable. MTB can customize keys and make his original key layout easily. And using transparent key top (optional), a film sheet with marking is inserted into the key.


## NOTE

* Use the oil-proof sheet in the environment which oil is used for.


### 9.2.9 Others

The keyboard of this operator's panel is a matrix composition. When three or more keys are pushed, the bypass current cause unrelated key to be available. Measures against the malfunction must be taken in the ladder program.
One example is shown as follows.
(Elimination rule of malfunction)
When three keyinputs or more is input, all the keyinput since the third is made invalid.
However, when the number of all keyinput becomes two or less because keyinput was lost, all keyinputs are made effective.

| State (a) State (b) State |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
|  |  |  |
| O: Keyswitch OFF ("0") : Keyswitch ON ("1") |  |  |

(Operation of ladder program)
The example of the operation of ladder program is shown about matrix DI composed of 8 bits $x 8$ commons as follows.
[1] The number of datalines where the keyinput exists is examined.
Logical add R1 of the data of all addresses is calculated. The number of bits which are " 1 " in the 8bits data of R1 corresponds to the number of datalines where the keyinput exists.
(1) When the data of R1 is corresponding to 00 h , there is no bit which is " 1 " in the data of R1.

Ex. State (a): R1 = (00000000)
$\rightarrow$ There is no dataline where input exists.
(2) when the data of R1 is corresponding to the data in undermentioned datatable 1., the number of bits which are " 1 " in the data of R1 is one. Similarly, when the data of R1 is corresponding to the data in datatable 2., the number of bits which are " 1 " in the data of R1 is two.
Ex. State (b) or (c): R1 = (00000100)
$\rightarrow$ There is one dataline where input exists.
Ex. State (d) or (e): R1 = (00010100)
$\rightarrow$ There are two datalines where input exists.
(3) If the data of R 1 is not corresponding to 00 h and the both datatables, the number of bits which are " 1 " in the data of R1 is three or more. Ex. State (f): R1 = (00110100)
$\rightarrow$ There are three datalines where input exists.

Data table 1.

| 00000001 | 00000010 |
| :--- | :--- |
| 00000100 | 00001000 |
| 00010000 | 00100000 |
| 01000000 | 10000000 |

Data table 2.

| 00000011 | 00000110 | 00001100 | 00011000 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 00110000 | 01100000 | 11000000 | 10000001 |
| 00000101 | 00001010 | 00010100 | 00101000 |
| 01010000 | 10100000 | 01000001 | 10000010 |
| 00001001 | 00010010 | 00100100 | 01001000 |
| 10010000 | 00100001 | 01000010 | 10000100 |
| 00010001 | 00100010 | 01000100 | 10001000 |

[2] Judgment 1
(1)If there is no dataline where the keyinput exists.
$\rightarrow$ Any key switch is not pushed.:
Ex. State (a)
(2) When the keyinput exists in two datalines or less.
$\rightarrow$ To [3]
(3) When the keyinput exists in three data lines or more.
$\rightarrow$ There are three keyinputs or more.
It is invalid keyinput.:
Ex. State (f)
[3] When the keyinput exists in two datalines or less, it is examined whether two or more keyinput exists on the same dataline.
The data of all addresses is subtracted from logical add R1 and subtraction result R2 is obtained. There are no two or more keyinput on the same dataline if it is $\mathrm{R} 2=00 \mathrm{~h}$.

Ex. When there is one dataline where input exists.
State (b) : R2 = FCh
State (c) : R2 = F8h
When there are two datalines where input exists.
State (d) : R2 $=00 \mathrm{~h}$
State (e) : R2 = FCh
[4] Judgment 2
(1) In case of R2 $200 \mathrm{~h} \rightarrow$ There are two or less datalines where input exists, and there are no two or more keyinputs on the same dataline. In this case, the numbers of all keyinputs are one or two. It is effective keyinput.:

Ex. State (d)
(2) In case of R2 $\neq 00 \mathrm{~h} \rightarrow$ There are two or less datalines where input exists, and two or more keyinputs exists on the same dataline.

To [5].
[5] Judgment 3
When there is one dataline where input exists
$\rightarrow$ To [6].
When there are two datalines where input exists
$\rightarrow$ There are three keyinputs or more. It is invalid keyinput.:

> Ex. State (e)
[6] Subtraction result R2 is added to logical add R1. If this addition result is 00 h , the number of all keyinputs is two.

Ex. $\quad$ State (b) : R1 $+\mathrm{R} 2=04 \mathrm{~h}+\mathrm{FCh}=00 \mathrm{~h}$
State (c) : R1 + R2 = 04h + F8h $=$ FCh
[7] Judgment 4
In case of $\mathrm{R} 1+\mathrm{R} 2=00 \mathrm{~h} \rightarrow$ There is one dataline where input exists, and there are two keyinputs on this dataline. That is, because the numbers of all input are two keys, it is effective input.: Ex. State (b)

In case of $\mathrm{R} 1+\mathrm{R} 2 \neq 00 \mathrm{~h} \rightarrow$ There are three keyinputs or more on the same dataline. It is invalid keyinput.: Ex. State (c)
[8] Only when the keyinput becomes effective because of judgment 1-4, all DI data $(\mathrm{Xm}+4-\mathrm{Xm}+11)$ is used by the ladder program.

## 9.3 <br> CONNECTION TO <br> THE SMALL <br> MACHINE <br> OPERATOR'S PANEL

9.3.1

Overview

The small machine operator's panel is a machine operator's panel connected to the CNC with an I/O Link. The operator's panel contains 30 keys, an emergency stop switch, and two override rotary switches. Be sure to see Subsection 9.3.11, for notes on using the keyboard.

### 9.3.2

Overall Connection
Diagram


## NOTE

1 If this operator's panel is used together with a unit (such as an I/O module for branching) connected to an I/O Link having another MPG interface, only the MPG interface of the unit (module) nearest the CNC connected to the I/O Link will be enabled by default. To enable the MPG interfaces of the second and subsequent units, set appropriate parameters. For details, refer to the manual supplied with the NC used.
2 The following screw-on connectors cannot be used for the connection of an I/O Link and manual pulse generator.
Connectors that cannot used on the cable side

|  | Specification | Manufacturer |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Connector case | FI-20-CV7 | Hirose Electric Co., Ltd. |
| Connector case and connector | FI30-20S-CV7 | Hirose Electric Co., Ltd. |

### 9.3.3

Connection of Each

## Section

9.3.3.1

Power connection

To the CPD1 connector, shown in the figure below, supply the power necessary for this operator's panel to operate, as well as the power for the general-purpose DI.


Recommended connector for use on the CPD1 cable side:
A02B-0120-K324 (including the following connector housing and contact) Housing: Japan AMP 1-178288-3 (3 pins) Contact: Japan AMP 1-175218-5

## NOTE

The +24 V power supplied to this connector must be turned OFF during operation. Turning it OFF will cause a CNC communication alarm to be generated. Make sure that at power ON, the supply of this +24 V power is at the same time as or earlier than the supply of the power to the CNC and that at power OFF, it is at the same time as or later than the interruption of the power to the CNC.
When the CNC connected to this operator's panel with an I/O Link is to be turned off, the power to this operator's panel must also be turned off.

### 9.3.3.2 Emergency stop switch

The emergency stop switch has contact A in two circuits and contact B in two circuits. (This signal is not sent to the CNC with a FANUC I/O Link.)
The machine tool builder is required to connect the switch to other DI/DO devices.


### 9.3.3.3 I/O Link connection <br> See Subsection 9.2.3.3.

### 9.3.3.4 <br> Manual pulse generator connection

An example in which three manual pulse generators are connected is given below. If this operator's panel is used together with a unit (such as an I/O module for connection) connected to an I/O Link having another MPG interface, only the MPG interface of the unit (module) nearest the CNC connected to the I/O Link will be enabled by default. To enable the MPG interfaces of the second and subsequent units, set appropriate parameters. For details, refer to the manual supplied with the CNC used.

Small machine operator's panel

Cable connection Terminal block Manual pulse generators


Recommended wire material: A66L-0001-0286 (\#20 AWG $\times 6+$ \#24 AWG $\times 3$ pair)
Recommended connectors: A02B-0120-K303 (including the following connector and case)
(Connector: Hirose Electric FI40B-2015S Soldering type)
(Case: Hirose Electric FI-20-CV)
Recommended cable: A02B-0120-K841 (7 m) (cable for three manual pulse generators)
A02B-0120-K848 (7 m) (cable for two manual pulse generators)
A02B-0120-K847 (7 m) (cable for one manual pulse generator)
(These cables are not used for the connection in the portion indicated by "Wiring".)

Calculate the maximum allowable length of the cable for the manual pulse generator, with the method described below.
Manual pulse generators are supplied with 5 VDC power. The drop in voltage due to cable resistance must not exceed 0.2 V (on 0 V and 5 V lines in total).

Example: When cable A66L-0001-0286 is used
This cable consists of three pairs of signal lines and six power wires (20/0.18, $0.0394 \Omega / \mathrm{m}$ ).
When these three cables are used for 0 V and 5 V lines, the cable length is:

$$
\mathrm{L} \leqq \frac{3}{0.0394}=76.75[\mathrm{~m}]
$$

Thus, the length is 76.75 m . (Because of the applicable regulation of FANUC, however, the length is limited to 50 m .)
For two units, the cable can be extended to 38.37 m .
For three units, it can be extended to 25.58 m .
If the cable A66L-0001-0284\#10P is used, the cable can be extended to 12.88 m for one unit, 6.44 m for two units, and 4.29 m for three units.

Make sure that the following conditions are satisfied when manual pulse generators other than those made by FANUC are used.
The relations between the HAn and HBn signals and the pulses issued to the CNC are as shown in the figure below. The period of the pulses $\mathrm{T}_{1}$ must be $200 \mu \mathrm{sec}$ or greater and $\mathrm{T}_{1} / 4$ must be $50 \mu \mathrm{sec}$ or greater.


The circuit to receive the signal of the manual pulse generator is as shown in the figure below.


Point of change of the input signal for the receiver (threshold)
3.7 V or greater if the input signal changes from the LOW level to the HIGH level.
1.5 V or less if the input signal changes from the HIGH level to the LOW level.

### 9.3.4

DI Signal Connection
(Rotary Switch Connection)


### 9.3.5 <br> I/O Address

9.3.5.1

Keyboard of the operator's panel

The I/O address correspondence between the key switches on the machine operator's panel and LEDs are as follows.

| Key/LED | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+4 / \mathrm{Yn}+0$ | A6 | A5 | A4 | A3 | A2 | A1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+5 / \mathrm{Yn}+1$ | B6/ <br> Without <br> LED | B5/ <br> Without <br> LED | B4/ <br> Without <br> LED | B3 | B2 | B1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm+6/Yn+2}$ | C6/ <br> Without <br> LED | C5/ <br> Without <br> LED | C4/ <br> Without <br> LED | C3 | C2 | C1 |
| $X m+7 / Y n+3$ | D6/ <br> Without <br> LED | D5/ <br> Without <br> LED | D4/ <br> Without <br> LED | D3 | D2 | D1 |
| $X m+8 / Y n+4$ | E6 | E5 | E4 | E3 | E2 | E1 |

Key switch/LED arrangement


### 9.3.5.2 Gray codes are output according to the table below.

## Override signals

Rotary switch (SA1)

| $\%$ | 0 | 1 | 2 | 4 | 6 | 8 | 10 | 15 | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 95 | 100 | 105 | 110 | 120 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.0$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.1$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.2$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+0.3$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $X m+0.4$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $X m+0.5$ | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |

Rotary switch (SA2)

| $\%$ | 50 | 60 | 70 | 80 | 90 | 100 | 110 | 120 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+1.0$ | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+1.1$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+1.2$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+1.3$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+1.4$ | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+1.5$ | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |

## NOTE

$1 \mathrm{Xm}+0.5$ and $\mathrm{Xm}+1.4$ are parity bits.
2 If parity bits are used, the output timing of override signals may differ from that of the parity bits.

### 9.3.6 <br> The I/O address maps for the main panel are as follows. <br> I/O Address Allocation

| Map of the DI space |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Xm+0 | General-purposeDI (Rotary switch) |
| Xm+1 |  |
| Xm+2 | Reserved |
| Xm+3 |  |
| Xm+4 | Operator's panel Keyboard (Key switch) |
| Xm+5 |  |
| Xm+6 |  |
| Xm+7 |  |
| Xm+8 |  |
| Xm+9 | Reserved |
| Xm+10 |  |
| Xm+11 |  |
| Xm+12 (1st MPG) | MPG |
| Xm+13 (2nd MPG) |  |
| Xm+14 (3rd MPG) |  |
| Xm+15 | Reserved |


| Map for the DO space |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Yn+0 | Operator's pane Keyboard (LED) |
| $Y \mathrm{n}+1$ |  |
| Yn+2 |  |
| Yn+3 |  |
| Yn+4 |  |
| Yn+5 | Reserved |
| Yn+6 |  |
| Yn+7 |  |

9.3.7

External Dimensions

### 9.3.7.1

Outline drawing and panel-cut drawing of the
small machine
operator's panel


Umit: mm

Weight : 1.5 kg
Panel-cut drawing

### 9.3.7.2

## Layout of the key sheet

## (1) M series



## (2) $T$ series



### 9.3.8

Connector Layout of
the Small Machine
Operator's Panel


### 9.3.9

## Specifications

### 9.3.9.1 <br> Environmental requirement

| Temperature Around a unit | At operation $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> Storing or transporting $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Temperature variance | Max. $\quad 1.1^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{min}$ |
| Humidity | Normally $75 \%$ or less (Relative humidity) <br> Short time (Within one month) $95 \%$ or less (Relative humidity) |
| Vibration | Operating 0.5 G or less |
| Atmosphere | Normal FA atmosphere (Consult us when using the system under environments with higher degree of dust, coolant, or organic solution.) |

### 9.3.9.2

## Order specification

| Name | Specification | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Small machine operator's panel | A02B-0299-C150\#M | M series |
| Small machine operator's panel | A02B-0299-C150\#T | T series |
| Transparent keysheet | A02B-0299-K210 | Three transparent keysheets |
| Fuse(Spare part) | A02B-0815-K001 | 1A |

### 9.3.9.3

Operator's panel specification

| Item | Specification | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Keyswitches of Machine operator's panel | 30 keys | Matrix DI |
| LED | Green | Supplied with 21 key switches |
| Override rotary switch | 2 | Gray code output (with a parity bit) <br> Contact b $\times 2$ 2) <br> M3.5 Screw |
| Emergency stop switch (Contact a $\times 2$, |  |  |
| MPG interface | 1 | Number of Contact |
| Interface to CNC | Max. 3 units |  |

9.3.9.4

Power supply
specification

| Item | Capacity | Remarks |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| 24VDC $\pm 10 \%$ (from Power connector <br> CPD1, including momentary values) <br> Momentary values and ripples are also <br> included in $\pm 10 \%$. | 0.4 A | Including all DI consumption |

### 9.3.10

Key Symbol Indication on Machine Operator's

## Panel

### 9.3.10.1

## Meaning of key symbols

| Symbol indication | English | Meaning of key |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\square$ | AUTO | AUTO mode selection signal; Sets automatic operation mode. |
| $\nabla>$ | EDIT | EDIT mode selection signal; Sets program edit operation mode. |
| -防 | MDI | MDI mode selection; Sets MDI mode. |
| せ | REMOTE | DNC operation mode; Sets DNC operation mode. |
| - | REF | Reference position return mode selection; Sets reference position return mode. |
| $M$ | JOG | JOG feed mode selection; Sets jog feed mode. |
| $\longrightarrow$ | INC | Step feed mode selection; Sets step feed mode. |
| (-9) | HANDLE | Manual handle feed mode selection; Sets manual handle feed mode. |
| $\begin{aligned} & W M \\ & -6) \end{aligned}$ | TEACH | Teach-in jog (reach-in handle) mode selection signal;Sets teach-in jog (teach-in handle) mode. |
|  | SINGLE BLOCK | Single block signal; Executes program one by one. This key is used to check a program. |


| Symbol <br> indication | English | Meaning of key |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |

### 9.3.10.2 Customization of the key sheet

If a customer wishes to partially modify the standard key sheet, he or she can customize the key sheet.

- The machine tool builder prints out the desired key indication on a sticker prepared by the machine tool builder.
- Apply the sticker on the standard key sheet.
- Remove the screws from the front side, remove the escutcheon, apply a transparent key sheet on the standard key sheet, taking care not to get dust or air caught between them. Finally, put back the escutcheon.
- The transparent key sheet is an option.

Specification:
A02B-0299-K210 (set of three transparent key sheets)

Size of the sticker

The keyboard of this operator's panel is in a matrix configuration. If three or more keys are pressed on the DI matrix, DIs not entered will be entered because of the circulation of the current.
Measures against the malfunction must be taken in the ladder program. See Subsection 9.2.9 for details.

## NOTE

If a small machine operator's panel customized in this way is to be maintained (replaced), the application of the sticker must be performed by the customer. The customer must prepare a sticker. Once peeled off, the transparent sheet cannot be reused. Another transparent sheet must be used.


### 9.3.11

Caution
9.3.12

Maintenance Parts

Consumables

| Name | Ordering specification | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Fuse (Operator's panel I/O printed <br> circuit board) | A60L-0001-0290\#LM10 | Rated: 1A |

Items to be repaired

| Name | Ordering specification | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Operator's panel I/O printed circuit <br> board | A20B-2002-0470 |  |
| Keyboard printed circuit board | A20B-2003-0660 |  |
| Small machine operator's panel | A20B-0299-C150\#M | M series |
|  | A20B-0299-C150\#T | T series |

## 9.4

CONNECTION OF CONNECTOR PANEL I/O MODULE

### 9.4.1

## Configuration



## NOTE

For direction connection to the connection printed circuit board, expansion modules are installed to the right of the basic module on the installation plane. For installation using DIN rails or screws, expansion modules are installed to the left of the basic module on the installation plane.

### 9.4.2

## Connection Diagram



## NOTE

1 Ensure that the expansion module with the MPG interface is located nearest to the basic module, as shown in the figure.
2 The connection diagram above shows an example of using a DI/DO module, 2A output module, and analog input module as expansion modules. These expansion modules can be used in any combination.

### 9.4.3

Module Specifications

Types of modules

| Name | Drawing No. | Specifications | Reference <br> item |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| I/O module for <br> connection <br> (basic module) | A03B-0818-C001 | DI/DO : 24/16 |  |
| I/O module for <br> connection <br> (expansion module A) | A03B-0818-C002 | DI/DO :24/16 <br> With MPG interface |  |
| I/O module for <br> connection <br> (expansion module B) | A03B-0818-C003 | DI/DO : 24/16 <br> Without MPG <br> interface |  |
| I/O module for <br> connection <br> (expansion module C) | A03B-0818-C004 | DO : 16 <br> 2A output module |  |
| I/O module for <br> connection <br> (expansion module D) | A03B-0818-C005 | Analog input <br> module |  |
| Fuse (accessory) | A03B-0815-K002 | 1A <br> (For basic module) |  |
| Inter-module flat <br> cable | A03B-0815-K100 | 20 mm long <br> Suitable for a module <br> interval of 32 mm |  |

Module specifications (common items)

| Item | Specifications | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Interface with CNC | FANUC I/O Link <br> connection | Expandable up to 16 units or <br> $1024 / 1024$ points as CNC slaves |
| Interface between <br> basic module and <br> expansion modules | Bus connection <br> using a flat cable | Up to three expansion modules <br> connectable per basic module |

For the specifications (such as signal input requirements) specific to each module, see the relevant pages of each item.

## Installation conditions

| Ambienttemperature for the unit | Operation: $\quad 0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ Storage and transportation: $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Temperature change | $1.1^{\circ} \mathrm{C} /$ minute maximum |
| Humidity | Normal condition: $75 \%$ (relative humidity) <br> Short term (within one month): $95 \%$ (relative humidity) |
| Vibration | Operation: 0.5 G or less |
| Atmosphere | Normal machining factory environment (For use in an environment with relatively high levels of dust, coolant, organic solutions, and so forth, additional measures are required.) |
| Other conditions | (1) Use each I/O module in a completely sealed cabinet. <br> (2) For ventilation within each I/O module, each module must be installed in the orientation shown below. Moreover, for ventilation and wiring, allow a clearance of 100 mm or more above and below each module. Never place a device that generates a large amount of heat below an I/O module. <br> (3) While referring to Section 9.4.17, ensure that the vent hole of the basic module is not obstructed by the flat cable. |

## Power supply rating

| Module | Power supply <br> voltage | Power supply <br> rating | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Basic module | $24 \mathrm{VDC} \pm 10 \%$ is fed <br> through the I/O <br> connector (CB150) of <br> the basic module; <br> $\pm 10 \%$ includes <br> momentary variations <br> and ripples. | $0.2 \mathrm{~A}+7.3 \mathrm{~mA} \times \mathrm{DI}$ | Number of DI <br> points with DI=ON |
| Expansion <br> modules A <br> and B | $0.1 \mathrm{~A}+7.3 \mathrm{~mA} \times \mathrm{DI}$ | Number of DI <br> points with DI=ON |  |
| Expansion <br> module C <br> (2A module) | 0.1 A |  |  |
| Expansion <br> module D <br> (analog input <br> module) |  | 0.1 A |  |

As a guideline for the heat dissipation, assume [power supply capacity $\times$ 24 (W)].

### 9.4.4 <br> DI/DO Connector Pin Assignment

This section describes the DI/DO connector pin allocation of the basic module and expansion modules A and B.

| CB150 (HONDA MR-50RMA) |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 33 | DOCOM |  |  | 01 | DOCOM |
| 34 | Yn+0.0 |  |  | 02 | Yn+1.0 |
| 35 | $Y n+0.1$ | 19 | OV | 03 | $Y n+1.1$ |
| 36 | $Y n+0.2$ | 20 | OV | 04 | $Y n+1.2$ |
| 37 | $Y n+0.3$ | 21 | OV | 05 | $Y n+1.3$ |
| 38 | $Y n+0.4$ | 22 | OV | 06 | $Y n+1.4$ |
| 39 | $Y n+0.5$ | 23 | OV | 07 | $Y n+1.5$ |
| 40 | Yn+0.6 | 24 | DICOM0 | 08 | Yn+1.6 |
| 41 | Yn+0.7 | 25 | Xm+1.0 | 09 | $Y n+1.7$ |
| 42 | Xm+0.0 | 26 | Xm+1.1 | 10 | Xm+2.0 |
| 43 | Xm+0.1 | 27 | Xm+1.2 | 11 | Xm+2.1 |
| 44 | Xm+0.2 | 28 | Xm+1.3 | 112 | Xm+2.2 |
| 45 | Xm+0.3 | 29 | Xm+1.4 | 13 | Xm+2.3 |
| 46 | Xm+0.4 | 30 | Xm+1.5 | 14 | Xm+2.4 |
| 47 | Xm+0.5 | 31 | Xm+1.6 | 15 | Xm+2.5 |
| 48 | Xm+0.6 | 32 | Xm+1.7 | 16 | Xm+2.6 |
| 49 | Xm+0.7 |  |  | 17 | Xm+2.7 |
| 50 | +24V |  |  | 18 | +24V |

50 male pins with fittings for fixing the connector covers

## NOTE

1 The DI and DO addresses for the basic and expansion modules run contiguously. These basic and expansion module DI and DO addresses are allocated to the I/O Link as a group. For example, when the DI and DO top addresses are X0004 and Y0000 ( $\mathrm{m}=4$ and $\mathrm{n}=0$ ), respectively, then the addresses are allocated as shown in the following table.
2 Pins 18 and $50(+24 \mathrm{~V})$ of connector CB150 are used to apply 24 V externally to a module. Be sure to connect these pins because the +24 V applied to the module is used internally.

|  | DI | DO |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Basic module | $\mathrm{X} 4-\mathrm{X} 6$ | $\mathrm{Y} 0-\mathrm{Y} 1$ |
| Expansion module 1 | $\mathrm{X} 7-\mathrm{X} 9$ | $\mathrm{Y} 2-\mathrm{Y} 3$ |
| Expansion module 2 | $\mathrm{X} 10-\mathrm{X} 12$ | $\mathrm{Y} 4-\mathrm{Y} 5$ |
| Expansion module 3 | $\mathrm{X} 13-\mathrm{X} 15$ | $\mathrm{Y} 6-\mathrm{Y} 7$ |

### 9.4.5 <br> DI (Input Signal) <br> Connection

This section describes the DI (input signal) connections of the basic module and expansion modules A and B.

- A maximum of 96 points are provided ( 24 points per module; 1 basic module +3 expansion modules).




## NOTE

Xm +0.0 through $\mathrm{Xm}+0.7$ are DI pins for which a common voltage can be selected. That is, by connecting the DICOM0 CB150(24) pin to the +24 V power supply, a DI signal can be input with its logical state reversed. If, however, a cable is connected to ground, it has the same effect as inputting an ON state DI signal. To prevent such accidents, the connection of the DICOM0 CB150(24) pin to the 0 V power supply is recommended whereever possible.

For safety reasons, the emergency stop signal needs to be allocated to an appropriate bit of the addresses for which the common voltage is fixed, ranging from $\mathrm{Xm}+1.0$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+1.7$ or from $X m+2.0$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+2.7$. See 9.4 .19 for information about how to allocate the emergency stop signal.

For unused DI pins allocated to the addresses for which the common voltage is fixed (from $X m+1.0$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+1.7$ and from $\mathrm{Xm}+2.0$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+2.7$ ), the logic is fixed to " 0 ". For unused pins allocated to $\mathrm{Xm}+0.0$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+0.7$ for which the common voltage can be selected, the logic is fixed to " 0 " when the DICOMO CB150(24) pin is connected to the 0 V power supply. When the DICOM0 CB150(24) pin is connected to the +24 V power supply, the logic is fixed to " 1 ". The logic of the unused pins allocated to $\mathrm{Xm}+0.0$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+0.7$ is variable when the contact of the DICOM0 CB150(24) pin is open.

### 9.4.6 DO (Output Signal) Connection

This section describes the DO (output signal) connections of the basic module and expansion modules A and B.

- A maximum of 64 points are provided (16 points per module; 1 basic module +3 expansion modules).



### 9.4.7 DI/DO Signal Specifications

This section describes the specifications of the DI/DO signals used with the basic module and expansion modules A and B .

DI (input signal specifications)

| Number of points | 24 points (per module) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Contact rating | $30 \mathrm{VDC}, 16 \mathrm{~mA}$ or more |
| Leakage current between <br> contacts when opened | 1 mA or less (26.4 V) |
| Voltage decrease between <br> contacts when closed | 2 V or less (including a cable voltage decrease) |
| Delay time | The receiver delay time is 2 ms (maximum). In <br> addition, [I/O Link transfer time between CNC and <br> l/O module (2 ms maximum)] +[ladder scan period <br> (depending on CNC)] must be considered. |

DO (output signal specifications)

| Number of points | 16 points (per module) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Maximum load current <br> when ON | 200 mA or less including momentary variations |
| Saturation voltage when <br> ON | 1 V (maximum) when the load current is 200 mA |
| Withstand voltage | $24 \mathrm{~V}+20 \%$ or less including momentary variations |
| Leakage current when <br> OFF | $20 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ or less |
| Delay time | The driver delay time is 50 $\mu \mathrm{s}$ (maximum). In <br> addition, [I/O Link transfer time between CNC and <br> $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ module (2 ms maximum)] + [ladder scan period <br> (depending on CNC)] needs to be considered. |

ON/OFF of the power supply (DO common) for DO signals (output signals)
By turning off (opening) the power supply pin (DOCOM) for the DO signals (output signals), all the DO signals of each module can be turned off at the same time. At this time, the DO state is as shown below.
DOCOM ON
DO state when
DO is on in the
sequence OF

## NOTE

When DO is on in the sequence, the ON/OFF state of DOCOM is directly reflected in the DO state as indicated above by the dashed box. The +24 V signal to be supplied to the I/O module must not be turned off during operation. Otherwise, a CNC communication alarm is issued. Ensure that +24 V is supplied either when or before the power to the CNC is turned on, and that +24 V is removed either when or after the power to the CNC is turned off.

Parallel DO (output signal) connection
A DO load current of twice the level can be obtained by connecting DO points in parallel and exercising ON/OFF control at the same time in the sequence. Namely, the maximum load current per DO point is 200 mA . By connecting two DO points in parallel and turning on the two DO points at the same time, 400 mA can be obtained. In this case, however, the leakage current is doubled up to $40 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ when the DO points are turned off.


### 9.4.8

2A Output Connector Pin Allocation

This section describes the 2A output connector pin allocation of expansion module C .

| CB154 (HONDA MR-50RMA) |  |  |  |  | 50 pins, male, with a metal fitting for securing the connector cover |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ${ }^{33}$ | DOCOMA |  | 01 | DOCOMA |  |
| 34 | Yn+0.0 |  | 02 | $Y \mathrm{n}+1.0$ |  |
| 35 | Yn+0.1 | GNDA | 03 | $Y \mathrm{n}+1.1$ |  |
| 36 | Yn+0.2 | GNDA | 04 | $Y \mathrm{n}+1.2$ |  |
| 37 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.3$ | GNDA | 05 | Yn+1.3 |  |
| 38 | Yn+0.4 | GNDA | 06 | Yn+1.4 |  |
| 39 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.5$ | GNDA | 07 | Yn+1.5 |  |
| 40 | Yn+0.6 |  | 08 | $Y \mathrm{n}+1.6$ |  |
| 41 | Yn+0.7 |  | 09 | $Y \mathrm{n}+1.7$ |  |
| 42 |  |  | 10 |  |  |
| 43 |  |  | 11 |  |  |
| 44 |  |  | 12 |  |  |
| 45 |  |  | 13 |  |  |
| 46 |  |  | 14 |  |  |
| 47 |  |  | 15 |  |  |
| 48 |  |  | 16 |  |  |
| 49 | DOCOMA |  | 17 | DOCOMA |  |
| 50 | DOCOMA |  | 18 | DOCOMA |  |

## NOTE

1 The DI/DO addresses of an expansion module and the DI/DO addresses of the basic module are contiguous. Addresses allocated to I/O Link are handled as a group covering the basic and expansion modules. That is, when the first addresses allocated are X0004 and Y0000 ( $\mathrm{m}=4$, $\mathrm{n}=0$ ), the $\mathrm{DI} / \mathrm{DO}$ addresses are as listed below.
2 When the 2A output module is used, the DI addresses of the module cannot be used. (When the 2A output module is used as expansion module 3, X13 through X15 cannot be used.)

|  | DI | D0 |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Basic module | X 4 to X 6 | Y 0 to Y 1 |
| Expansion module 1 | X 7 to X 9 | Y 2 to Y 3 |
| Expansion module 2 | X 10 to X 12 | Y 4 to Y 5 |
| Expansion module 3 | X 13 to X 15 | Y 6 to Y 7 |

9.4.9

## 2A DO (Output Signal)

Connection

This section describes the 2 A output connector connections of expansion module C.


### 9.4.10 2A Output DO Signal Specifications

This section describes the specifications of the 2 A output DO signals used with expansion module C .

DO (output signal specifications)

| Number of points | 32 points (per module) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Maximum load current <br> when ON | 2 A or less per point. <br> 12 A maximum for the entire module <br> (DO: 16 points) (including momentary variations). |
| Withstand voltage | $24 \mathrm{~V}+20 \%$ or less <br> (including momentary variations) |
| Leakage current when OFF | $100 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ or less |
| Delay time | $[I / O$ Link transfer time (2 ms maximum) $]+[$ ladder <br> scan period (depending on CNC) $]$ must be <br> considered. |

ON/OFF of the power supply (DO common) for DO signals (output signals)
By turning off (opening) the power supply pin (DOCOM) for the DO signals (output signals), all the DO signals of each module can be turned off at one time. At this time, the DO state is as shown below.


## NOTE

When DO is on in the sequence, the ON/OFF state of DOCOM is directly reflected in the DO state as indicated above by the dashed box. The +24 V signal to be supplied to the I/O module must not be turned off during operation. Otherwise, a CNC communication alarm is issued. Ensure that +24 V is supplied either when or before the power to the CNC is turned on, and that +24 V is removed either when or after the power to the CNC is turned off.

Parallel DO (output signal) connection
The 2A output module does not allow parallel DO connections including parallel connections with the DO signals of other modules.

### 9.4.11

Analog Input Connector Pin Allocation

This section describes the analog input connector pin allocation of expansion module D .

| CB157 (HONDA MR-50RMA) |  |  |  |  | 50 pins, male, with a metal fitting for securing the connector cover |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 33 | INM3 |  | 01 | INM1 |  |
| 34 | COM3 |  | 02 | COM1 |  |
| 35 | FGND3 | FGND | 03 | FDND1 |  |
| 36 | INP3 | FGND | 04 | INP1 |  |
| 37 | JMP3 | FGND | 05 | JMP1 |  |
| 38 | INM4 | FGND | 06 | INM2 |  |
| 39 | COM4 | FGND | 07 | COM2 |  |
| 40 | FGND4 |  | 08 | FGND2 |  |
| 41 | INP4 |  | 09 | INP2 |  |
| 42 | JMP4 |  | 10 | JMP2 |  |
| 43 |  |  | 11 |  |  |
| 44 |  |  | 12 |  |  |
| 45 |  |  | 13 |  |  |
| 46 |  |  | 14 |  |  |
| 47 |  |  | 15 |  |  |
| 48 |  |  | 16 |  |  |
| 49 |  |  | 17 |  |  |
| 50 |  |  | 18 |  |  |

## NOTE

1 The DI/DO addresses of an expansion module and the DI/DO addresses of the basic module are contiguous. Addresses allocated to I/O Link are handled as a group covering the basic and expansion modules. That is, when the first addresses allocated are X0004 and Y0000 ( $\mathrm{m}=4$, $\mathrm{n}=0$ ), the DI/DO addresses are as listed below.
2 With the analog input module, the DO space is also used as an input channel selection area.

|  | DI | DO |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Basic module | X 4 to X 6 | Y 0 to Y 1 |
| Expansion module 1 | X 7 to X 9 | Y 2 to Y 3 |
| Expansion module 2 | X 10 to X 12 | Y 4 to Y 5 |
| Expansion module 3 | X 13 to X 15 | Y 6 to Y 7 |

## 9.4 .12 <br> Analog Input Signal Connections

This section provides a diagram of the analog input connector connections of expansion module D .


## NOTE

1 In the diagram above, $n$ represents each channel ( $\mathrm{n}=1,2$, $3,4)$.
2 Current input or voltage input can be selected on a channel-by-channel basis. For current input, connect JMPn to INPn.
3 For the connection, use a shielded twisted pair.
4 In the diagram above, the shield of each channel is connected to FGNDn, and FGND is used for shield processing of all channels. However, the shield of a channel may be directly connected to frame ground with a cable clamp, instead of using FGNDn.
5 If the voltage (current) source has a GND pin, as shown in the figure above, connect COMn to this pin. Otherwise, connect INMn and COMn together in the analog input module.
9.4.13

Analog Input Signal Specifications

This section describes the specifications of the analog input signals used with expansion module D.

| Item | Specifications |  | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Number of input channels (Note) | Four channels |  |  |
| Analog input | DC -10 to +10 V <br> (Input resistance: $4.7 \mathrm{M} \Omega$ ) <br> DC -20 to +20 mA <br> (Input resistance: $250 \Omega$ ) |  | Voltage input or current input can be selected on channel-by-channel basis. |
| Digital output (Note) | 12 bits (binary) |  | Represented as two's complement |
| Input/output correspondence | Analoginput | Digital output |  |
|  | +10V | +2000 |  |
|  | +5 V or +20 mA | +1000 |  |
|  | 0 V or 0mA | 0 |  |
|  | -5 V or -20 mA | -1000 |  |
|  | -10V | -2000 |  |
| Resolution | 5 mV or $20 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ |  |  |
| Overall precision | Voltage input: $\pm 0.5 \%$ <br> Current input: $\pm 1 \%$ |  | With respect to full scale |
| Maximum input voltage/current | $\pm 15 \mathrm{~V} / \pm 30 \mathrm{~mA}$ |  |  |
| Minimum conversion time (Note) | Ladder scan period of CNC connected |  |  |
| Number of occupied input/output points (Note) | $\mathrm{DI}=3$ bytes, $\mathrm{DO}=2$ bytes |  |  |

## NOTE

This analog input module has four input channels. The digital output section consists of a group of 12 bits within the three-byte occupied input points. This means that the channel to be used can be dynamically selected by the ladder. The channel switching DO point for channel selection is included in the two-byte occupied output points.

### 9.4.14 <br> Analog Input Specifications

## (Digital output)

This digital input module has four input channels. The digital output section consists of a group of 12 bits within the three-byte occupied input points. The output format is indicated below.

| Address in the module | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Xm (even-numbered address) | D07 | D06 | D05 | D04 | D03 | D02 | D01 | D00 |
| Xm+1 (odd-numbered address) | 0 | 0 | CHB | CHA | D11 | D10 | D09 | D08 |

D00 to D11 represent 12-bit digital output data. D00 and D11 correspond to weightings of $2^{0}$ and $2^{11}$, respectively.
D11 is a sign bit expressed as a two's complement. CHA and CHB represent analog input channels.
This means that when the two bytes above are read with a PMC program, the $\mathrm{A}-\mathrm{D}$ converted data of the CHA and CHB input channels can be read from D11 to D00. For CHA and CHB, see the description of channel selection, below.
Section 6.3 provides notes on reading data with a PMC program.

## (Channel selection)

With this analog input module, which of the four channels is to be output to the digital output section must be determined with a PMC program. The DO points used for this selection are CHA and CHB (two-byte occupied output points). These are mapped as indicated below.

| Address in the module | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Yn | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X |
| Yn+1 | X | X | X | X | X | X | CHB | CHA |

By writing the values indicated below to CHA and CHB , the corresponding channel is selected, and the $\mathrm{A}-\mathrm{D}$ converted data of the channel and the data of the selected channel can be read as DI data. The character X indicated above represents an unused bit, so that either 1 or 0 may be written in place of $X$.

| CHB | CHA | Channel selected |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 0 | 0 | Channel 1 |
| 0 | 1 | Channel 2 |
| 1 | 0 | Channel 3 |
| 1 | 1 | Channel 4 |

## (Address)

The start address of $\mathrm{X}(\mathrm{DI})$ of the basic modules including the analog input module must always be allocated at an even-numbered address. With this allocation, the digital output addresses of the analog input module are as described below, depending on where the analog input module is allocated

- When the analog input module is allocated in the space for expansion module 1 ( m represents the allocation start address.)
$\begin{array}{clllllll}\text { Address in the module } & 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1\end{array}$

| Address in the module | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Xm+3 (odd-numbered address) | Undefined |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Xm+4 (even-numbered address) | D07 | D06 | D05 | D04 | D03 | D02 | D01 | D00 |
| Xm+5 (odd-numbered address) | 0 | 0 | CHB | CHA | D11 | D10 | D09 | D08 |

- When the analog input module is allocated in the space for expansion module 2 ( m represents the allocation start address.)

| Address in the module | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Xm+6 (even-numbered address) | D07 | D06 | D05 | D04 | D03 | D02 | D01 | D00 |
| Xm+7 (odd-numbered address) | 0 | 0 | CHB | CHA | D11 | D10 | D09 | D08 |
| Xm+8(even-numbered address) | Undefined |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

- When the analog input module is allocated in the space for expansion module 3 ( m represents the allocation start address.)

| Address in the module | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Xm+9 (odd-numbered address) | Undefined |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Xm+10 (even-numbered address) | D07 | D06 | D05 | D04 | D03 | D02 | D01 | D00 |
| Xm+11 (odd-numbered address) | 0 | 0 | CHB | CHA | D11 | D10 | D09 | D08 |

## NOTE

When two-byte digital output addresses are to be referenced with a PMC program, a read must always be performed word-by-word (16 bits).

### 9.4.15 <br> Manual Pulse Generator Connection

An example in which three manual pulse generators are connected to expansion module A is shown below. The manual pulse generator can be connected only for the $i$ series CNC.


Recommended wire material:
A66L-0001-0286 (\#20 AWG $\times 6+\# 24$ AWG $\times 3$ pairs)
Recommended connector:
A02B-0120-K303 (including the following connector and case)
(Connector: FI40-2015S (Hirose Electric Co., Ltd.))
(Case: FI40-20-CV5 (Hirose Electric Co., Ltd.))
Recommended cables:
A02B-0120-K841 (7 m)
(for connecting three manual pulse generators)
A02B-0120-K848 (7 m)
(for connecting two manual pulse generators)
A02B-0120-K847 (7 m)
(for connecting one manual pulse generator)
(These cables do not include the wire shown in the above figure.)

## NOTE

The number of connectable manual pulse generators depends on the type and option configuration.

### 9.4.16 Cable Length for Manual Pulse Generator

Like a pulse coder, the manual pulse generator operates on 5 VDC. The supply voltage drop due to the cable resistance must be held below 0.2 V (when those of the 0 -volt and 5 -volt wires are combined), as expressed in the following expression:

$$
0.2 \geqq \frac{0.1 \times \mathrm{R} \times 2 \mathrm{~L}}{\mathrm{~m}}
$$

Where
$0.1=$ manual pulse generator supply current ( 0.1 A )
$\mathrm{R}=$ resistance per unit cable length $(\Omega / \mathrm{m})$
$\mathrm{m}=$ number of 0 -volt and 5 -volt wires
$\mathrm{L}=$ cable length (m).
Therefore, the cable length can be determined using the following expression.

$$
\mathrm{L} \leqq \frac{\mathrm{~m}}{\mathrm{R}}
$$

In the case of the A66L-0001-0286 cable, for example, when three pairs of signal wires and six power supply wires (20/0.18, $0.0394 \Omega / \mathrm{m}$ ) are used (three power supply wires connected to 5 V and the other three to 0 V ), the cable length is:
$\mathrm{L} \leqq \frac{3}{0.0394}=76.75[\mathrm{~m}]$
However, the maximum pulse transmission distance for the manual pulse generator is 50 m . Taking this into consideration, the cable length may be extended to:
38.37 m (when two generators are used), or
25.58 m (when three generators are used).

### 9.4.17 <br> Connection of Basic and Expansion Modules

Modules can be connected in the same way, regardless of whether you are connecting the basic module to an expansion module or connecting two expansion modules. Connect the modules by using 34 -pin flat cable connectors as shown in the figure below. Ensure that all 34 pins at one end of the cable are connected to the corresponding pins at the other end; e.g., connect the A1 pin to the pin having the same designation (A1) at the other end.


## NOTE

Modules need to be spaced at least 32 mm apart, in which case a flat cable of about 20 mm in length is required. To install modules further away from each other, the cable length will be 20 mm plus the extra distance. Note that the maximum length of a flat cable is 300 mm . To ensure adequate ventilation, install the modules in such a way that the flat cables lie on top of them. The basic module has a vent at the top (as indicated by the dotted lines in the above figure). When connecting modules, install expansion modules so that the flat cables do not cover the vent, as shown in the above figure.
Therefore, for direct connection to the connection printed circuit board, expansion modules are installed to the right of the basic module on the installation plane. For installation using DIN rails or screws, expansion modules are installed to the left of the basic module on the installation plane.
9.4.18

Module Installation

When connecting a connector panel printed circuit board directly (external module view and mounting diagram)

Dimensions of connector panel printed circuit board $\pm 0.2$


ector panel printed circuit board connector specification: HONDA MRH-50FD (50-pin female straight connector without fitting)

## NOTE

1 A connector with a fitting (HONDA MRH-50RMA) is used for the module-side I/O interface. Always use a connector having no fitting for the connector panel printed circuit board.
2 Area where pattern printing is prohibited

: Prohibited area on soldered side
: Prohibited area on component side

When connecting a connector panel printed circuit board directly (mounting and dismounting a module)


Mounting the module

1. Insert the hook of the module into the square hole located at the upper part of the connector panel printed circuit board.
2. Using the hook as a fulcrum, push the module in the direction of (B) and attach the module's connector to the connector on the printed circuit board.
3. Push the stopper into the lower hole of the printed circuit board until it clicks into place.

Dismounting the module

1. Press the stopper © upward.
2. Using the hook as a fulcrum, pull the lower part of the module in the direction of (A)

## NOTE

When mounting and dismounting a module, hold the module by its top and bottom surfaces. Avoid applying force to the sides where there are slits.


## NOTE

Recommended connector: A02B-0098-K891 (including the following connector and case)
(Connector: HONDA MR-50FH solder type)
(Case: HONDA MR-50NSB angled type)
Recommended wire material: A66L-0001-0042 (7/0.18, 50 pins)

When mounting a DIN rail (mounting and dismounting a module)


NOTE
When dismounting the module, take care not to damage the stopper by applying excessive force with the screwdriver.
When mounting and dismounting a module, hold the module by its top and bottom surfaces. Avoid applying force to the sides where there are slits.

When mounting a module using screws (external module view and mounting diagram)


## NOTE

Recommended connector: A02B-0098-K891 (including the following connector and case) (Connector: HONDA MR-50FH solder type)
(Case: HONDA MR-50NSB angled type)
Recommended wire material: A66L-0001-0042 (7/0.18, 50 pins)
9.4.19

Other Notes

## DO signal reaction to a system alarm

If a system alarm occurs in a CNC using the connector panel I/O module, or if I/O Link communication between the CNC and connector panel I/O module fails, all the DO signals of the I/O module are turned off. Therefore, due care must be taken when setting up the machine sequence. Also, the same phenomenon occurs if the power to the CNC or the I/O module is turned off.

For the connector panel I/O module, I/O addresses are mapped as follows.

| DI space map |  | DO space map |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Xm | Basic module | Yn | Basic module |
| Xm+1 |  | Yn+1 |  |
| Xm+2 |  | $Y \mathrm{n}+2$ | Expansion module 1 |
| Xm+3 | Expansion module 1 | Yn+3 |  |
| Xm+4 |  | $Y \mathrm{n}+4$ | Expansion |
| Xm+5 |  | Yn+5 | module 2 |
| Xm+6 | Expansion module 2 | Yn+6 | Expansion module 3 |
| Xm+7 |  | Yn+7 |  |
| Xm+8 |  |  |  |
| Xm+9 | Expansion module 3 |  |  |
| Xm+10 |  |  |  |
| Xm+11 |  |  |  |
| Xm+12 (for 1st MPG) | Expansion module 1 |  |  |
| Xm+13 (for 2nd MPG) |  |  |  |
| Xm+14 (for 3rd MPG) |  |  |  |
| $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline X m+15 \\ \text { (DO alarm detection) } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | Basic module |  |  |

The basic connector panel I/O module is allocated a group of DI addresses ( 16 bytes) and a group of DO addresses ( 8 bytes). Up to three hardware expansion modules can be added or removed as required. The reason for this address allocation is explained below.
The MPG interface (MPG counter) occupies a DI space from Xm+12 through $\mathrm{Xm}+14$. These addresses are fixed regardless of whether expansion module 2 or 3 is used, and $\mathrm{Xm}+12$ through $\mathrm{Xm}+14$ must be allocated as a DI work area to enable the use of the MPG. Therefore, when using an MPG for the $i$ series CNC, allocate DI addresses in units of 16 bytes. Do not use the DI space from $\mathrm{Xm}+12$ through $\mathrm{Xm}+14$ for Ladder; the CNC processes the MPG counter value directly.
DI address $\mathrm{Xm}+15$ is used for detecting overcurrent and overheating alarms that occur in the IC used in the DO driver. [For details, see the section describing the detection of DO (output signal) alarms.] This address is fixed regardless of whether expansion module 2 or 3 is used, and it must be allocated as a work area before it can be used. When using this area, therefore, allocate DI addresses in units of 16 bytes.
Basically, I/O addresses can be allocated to the connector panel I/O modules freely. When allocating DI addresses, however, consider also the addresses that are directly supervised by the CNC , and keep the following in mind.

Fixed addresses directly supervised by the CNC

|  | $\mathbf{7}$ | $\mathbf{6}$ | $\mathbf{5}$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | X0004 | SKIP | ESKIP | - MIT2 | +MIT2 | - MIT1 | +MIT1 | ZAE |
|  |  | SKIP6 | SKIP5 | SKIP4 | SKIP3 | SKIP2 | SKIP8 | SKIP7 |
|  | SKIP | ESKIP | SKIP5 | SKIP4 | SKIP3 | ZAE | YAE <br> SKIP2 | XAE <br> SKIP7 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  | *ESP |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | *DEC4 | *DEC3 | *DEC2 | *DEC1 |

The upper row indicates those signals used for the T series. Those in the lower row are for the M series.

When DI addresses are allocated in units of 16 bytes, starting at X0004

| X0004 | Basic module | $\longleftarrow$ SKIPn and other fixed signals |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| X0005 |  | *ESP fixed signal <br> *DECn fixed signal |
| X0006 |  |  |
| X0007 | Expansion module 1 |  |
| X0008 |  |  |
| X0009 |  |  |
| X0010 | Expansion module 2 |  |
| X0011 |  |  |
| X0012 |  |  |
| X0013 | Expansion module 3 | The minimum configuration consists of the basic module and |
| X0014 |  | expansion module 1. Expansion modules 2 and 3 may be |
| X0015 |  | added as required. This allows fixed signals, such as SKIPn |
| X0016 (for 1st MPG) | Expansion module 1 | and *DECn, to always be used and the *ESP fixed signal to be |
| X0017 (for 2nd MPG) |  | - allocated to an address for which the common voltage is fixed to |
| X0018 (for 3rd MPG) |  | 24 V . Also, with the $i$ series CNC, the MPG interface provided |
| X0019 <br> (DO alarm detection) | Basic module | by expansion module 1 can always be used. |

When DI addresses are allocated in units of 16 bytes, starting at X0007

| X0007 | Basic module | $\qquad$ *ESP fixed signal$\qquad$ *DECn fixed signal |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| X0008 |  |  |
| X0009 |  |  |
| X0010 | Expansion module 1 |  |
| X0011 |  |  |
| X0012 |  |  |
| X0013 | Expansion module 2 |  |
| X0014 |  |  |
| X0015 |  |  |
| X0016 | Expansion module 3 | The minimum configuration consists of the basic module only. |
| X0017 |  | Expansion modules 1, 2, and 3 may be added as required. In |
| X0018 |  | the minimum configuration, SKIP and other fixed signals and the |
| X0019 (for 1st MPG) | Expansion module 1 | MGP interface of expansion module 1 cannot be used. In this |
| X0020 (for 2nd MPG) |  | case, however, the "DECn fixed signal can always be used and |
| X0021 (for 3rd MPG) |  | the common voltage is fixed to 24 V in the minimum |
| X0022 <br> (DO alarm detection) | Basic module | : configuration. |

DO (output signal) alarm detection

The DO driver of the Basic and Expansion module A/B is capable of detecting an overcurrent and measuring its own temperature. If an accident, such as the connecting of the cable to ground, causes an abnormal increase in the load current or in the driver temperature, a protection circuit, which is provided for each DO driver ( 1 byte), is activated and keeps the DO signal for the relevant 1 byte in the OFF state until the cause of the problem is eliminated. Even if this occurs, the CNC and I/O module continue operating. The DI address (Xm+15) identifies the DO driver which has detected the alarm. The following table shows the correspondence between the DI address ( $\mathrm{Xm}+15$ ) bits and the DO addresses. Bit value " 1 " indicates that the corresponding DO driver has detected an alarm. The contents of the $\mathrm{Xm}+15$ area can be checked by using the DGN screen of the CNC or by performing alarm processing for the area in advance by using Ladder. This helps alarm detection and recovery.

| Alarm detection <br> address and bit | DO address | Location |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0$ | Basic module |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.1$ | $\mathrm{Yn+1}$ | Basic module |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn+2}$ | Expansion module 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.3$ | $\mathrm{Yn+3}$ | Expansion module 1 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+4$ | Expansion module 2 |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.5$ | $\mathrm{Yn+6}$ | Expansion module 2 |
| $\mathrm{Xm+15.6}$ | $\mathrm{Yn+7}$ | Expansion module 3 |
| $\mathrm{Xm+15.7}$ |  | Expansion module 3 |

## NOTE

This function is not supported by the 2 A output module or analog input module.

Allocation of the 2 A output module and analog input module The 2A output module and analog input module can be allocated to any of the spaces for expansion modules 1,2 , and 3 . In addition, up to three 2 A output modules or analog input modules can be allocated to all the spaces for expansion modules 1,2 , and 3 . When an MPG interface is required, the module occupies the space for expansion module 1; no 2A output module or analog input module can be allocated in the space for expansion module 1.
The 2A output module does not involve DI points, so that the DI area of the space in which a 2 A output module is allocated is unusable. When a 2A output module is allocated to the space for expansion module 2 , for example, the areas from $\mathrm{Xm}+6$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+8$ cannot be used. (The spaces for the other modules are not shifted. In this case, the DI space of expansion module 3 remains at $\mathrm{Xm}+9$ through $\mathrm{Xm}+11$.)

### 9.4.20 Distribution I/O Setting

By changing the setting (rotary switch) for the expansion modules, connections can be made by omitting some expansion modules as shown below.


* This is a diagram in which each device is positioned so that the I/O interface connector (CB150) is on the far side.

Method of setting (control and method of setting the control)
As shown below, the control (rotary switch) is located on an expansion module. To change the setting, turn the switch with a flat-bladed screwdriver with a tip width of about 2.5 mm .


The function of the rotary switch is as follows:

| Setting <br> position | Actual <br> indication | Meaning of setting |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| 0 | 0 | This is the standard setting. The rotary switch is <br> factory-set to this position. This setting is used <br> when no expansion module is omitted. |
| 1 | - | Set the rotary switch on an expansion module to <br> this position when the preceding expansion <br> module is omitted. |
| 2 | 2 | Set the rotary switch on an expansion module to <br> this position when the preceding two expansion <br> modules are omitted. |
| 3 | - | This setting is prohibited. |
| 4 to F | $4,-, 6,-$, <br> $8,-, A,-$, <br> $\mathrm{C},-, \mathrm{E},-$, | 4,8, or C has the same effect as 0. <br> 5,9, or D has the same effect as 1. <br> 6, A, or E has the same effect as 2. <br> $7, \mathrm{~B}$, or F has the same effect as 3. (This setting, <br> however, is prohibited.) |

Examples of setting

(When expansion module 1 is omitted) On expansion module 2, set the rotary switch to setting position 1. On expansion module 3 , keep the rotary switch set to setting position 0 .

(When expansion module 2 is omitted) On expansion module 3, set the rotary switch to setting position 1 . On expansion module 1, keep the rotary switch set to setting position 0 .

(When expansion modules 1 and 2 are omitted)
On expansion module 3, set the rotary switch to setting position 2.

## NOTE

1 Expansion module A (DI/DO = 24/16, with manual pulse interface) (A03B-0815-C002) is fitted with an additional rotary switch as other types of modules are modified. However, expansion module A is always mounted at the location of expansion module 1, so that its factory setting need not be changed.
2 This is a diagram in which each device is positioned so that the I/O interface connector (CB150) is on the far side.

## 9.5 <br> CONNECTION OF OPERATOR'S PANEL <br> I/O MODULE <br> (FOR MATRIX INPUT)

### 9.5.1

## Overall Connection

## Diagram



## NOTE

The MPG can be connected to this operator's panel I/O module only when the $i$ series CNC is used. When the operator's panel I/O module is used together with a unit (connector panel I/O module) connected to the I/O Link supporting another MPG interface, only the MPG interface of the unit (module) closest to the CNC connected to the I/O Link is enabled. The following screw type connectors cannot be used to connect the I/O Link or MPG.

Connectors that cannot be used on the cable side

|  | Specification | Manufacturer |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Connector | FI-20-CV7 | Hirose Electric Co., Ltd. |
| Connector case and connector | FI30-20S-CV7 | Hirose Electric Co., Ltd. |

### 9.5.2 <br> Power Connection

Provide the CPD1 (IN) connector, shown below, with the power necessary for printed circuit board operation and that for DI operation. To facilitate power division, the power is output to CPD1 (OUT) exactly as it is input from CPD1 (IN). When power division is required, use CPD1 (OUT).
Up to 1.0 A can be supplied by branching.


## NOTE

The specification of the power supply connector CPD1 (IN) is the same as that for CPD1 (OUT). There are no indications on the printed circuit board to distinguish between the IN and OUT connectors. Do not turn off the +24 V supply to the connector during operation. Turning off the +24 V supply will cause a CNC communication alarm. When turning on the power, the +24 V supply to the I/O module must be turned on before or at the same time as the power supply to the CNC. When turning off the power, the +24 V supply to the I/O module must be turned off after or at the same time as the power supply to the CNC.

### 9.5.3

DI/DO Connector Pin Arrangement

| CE53 |  |  | CE54 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | A | B |  | A | B |
| 01 | OV | OV | 01 | OV | OV |
| 02 | N.C. | +24V | 02 | COM1 | +24V |
| 03 | Xm+0.0 | Xm+0.1 | 03 | Xm+1.0 | Xm+1.1 |
| 04 | Xm+0.2 | Xm+0.3 | 04 | Xm+1.2 | Xm+1.3 |
| 05 | Xm+0.4 | Xm+0.5 | 05 | $\mathrm{Xm}+1.4$ | Xm+1.5 |
| 06 | Xm+0.6 | Xm+0.7 | 06 | Xm+1.6 | Xm+1.7 |
| 07 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.1$ | 07 | Yn+3.0 | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.1$ |
| 08 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.3$ | 08 | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.3$ |
| 09 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.5$ | 09 | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.5$ |
| 10 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.7$ | 10 | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.7$ |
| 11 | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.1$ | 11 | $\mathrm{Yn}+4.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+4.1$ |
| 12 | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.3$ | 12 | $\mathrm{Yn}+4.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+4.3$ |
| 13 | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.5$ | 13 | Yn+4.4 | $\mathrm{Yn}+4.5$ |
| 14 | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.7$ | 14 | Yn+4.6 | Yn+4.7 |
| 15 | Yn+2.0 | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.1$ | 15 | Yn+5.0 | Yn+5.1 |
| 16 | Yn+2.2 | Yn+2.3 | 16 | Yn+5.2 | Yn+5.3 |
| 17 | Yn+2.4 | Yn+2.5 | 17 | Yn+5.4 | Yn+5.5 |
| 18 | Yn+2.6 | Yn+2.7 | 18 | Yn+5.6 | Yn+5.7 |
| 19 | KYDO | KYD1 | 19 | Yn+6.0 | $\mathrm{Yn}+6.1$ |
| 20 | KYD2 | KYD3 | 20 | Yn+6.2 | $\mathrm{Yn}+6.3$ |
| 21 | KYD4 | KYD5 | 21 | $\mathrm{Yn}+6.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+6.5$ |
| 22 | KYD6 | KYD7 | 22 | Yn+6.6 | $\mathrm{Yn}+6.7$ |
| 23 | KCM1 | KCM2 | 23 | KCM5 | KCM6 |
| 24 | KCM3 | KCM4 | 24 | KCM7 | DOCOM |
| 25 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 25 | DOCOM | DOCOM |
| Flat cable-side connector specification: A02B-0120-K342 <br> (HIFBB-50D-2.54R (Hirose Electric Co., Ltd.)) <br> 50 contacts <br> Cable material specification: A02B-0120-K886 <br> (61-meter, $50-$ pin cable <br> (Hitachi Cable, Ltd. or Oki Electric Cable Co., Ltd.)) |  |  |  |  |  |

## NOTE

An output DC voltage of +24 V at CE53 (B02) and CE54 (B02) is for DI signals. Do not supply 24 VDC to these pins from the outside.
9.5.4

DI (General-purpose
Input Signal) Connection


## NOTE

$1 \mathrm{Xm}+1.0$ through $\mathrm{Xm}+1.7$ are DI pins for which a common voltage can be selected. That is, by connecting the COM1 CE54(A02) pin to the +24 V power supply, a DI signal can be input with its logical state reversed. If, however, a cable is connected to ground, it has the same effect as inputting an ON state DI signal. To prevent this from occurring, the connection of the COM1 CE54(A02) pin to the 0 V power supply is recommended whereever possible.
For safety reasons, the emergency stop signal needs to be allocated to an appropriate bit of the addresses for which the common voltage is fixed, ranging from $\mathrm{Xm}+0.0$ to Xm+0.7. See "Address allocation" in Section 9.5.10 for details of how to allocate the emergency stop signal. For unused DI pins allocated to the addresses for which the common voltage is fixed (from $\mathrm{Xm}+0.0$ to $\mathrm{Xm}+0.7$ ), the logic is fixed to " 0 ". For unused pins allocated to $X m+1.0$ to Xm+1.7 for which the common voltage can be selected, the logic is fixed to " 0 " when the COM1 CE54(A02) pin is connected to the 0 V power supply. When the COM1 CE54(A02) pin is connected to the +24 V power supply, the logic is fixed to " 1 ". The logic of the unused pins allocated to $X m+1.0$ to $X m+1.7$ is variable when the contact of the COM1 CE54(A02) pin is open.
2 An output DC voltage of +24 V at CE53 (B02) and CE54 (B02) is for DI signals. Do not supply 24 VDC to these pins from the outside.

### 9.5.5 <br> - A maximum of 56 points are provided.

## DI (Matrix Input Signal)

 Connection

## NOTE

Detour prevention diodes must be incorporated for matrix signal input, as shown in the following figure. Otherwise, only two signals can be input at the same time. Inputting three or more signals simultaneously without using detour prevention diodes may result in data input errors.


### 9.5.6

- A maximum of 56 points are provided.


## DO (Output Signal)

Connection




9.5.7

Manual Pulse
Generator Connection

For details of the connection of the manual pulse generator, see Section 9.4.15.

### 9.5.8

## External View



Machine operator's panel DI/DO interface


## I : Polarity guide <br> : A1 pin mark



### 9.5.9

Specifications

Installation specifications

| Ambient temperature | During operation $0^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $58^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> During storage and transportation $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| Temperature change | Max. $1.1^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{min}$. |
| Relative humidity | Normal  <br> Short term (1 month or less) $: 75 \%$ or less <br> $95 \%$ or less |
| Vibration | During operation : 0.5 G or less |
| Environment | Ordinary machining factory environment (Special consideration is required when installing the module in a dusty location or where highly concentrated cutting lubricant or organic solvent is used.) |
| Other requirements | (1) Install the I/O module in a fully enclosed cabinet. |

Ordering specifications

| Item | Specification | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Operator's panel I/O <br> module | A20B-2002-0470 | General-purpose DI: 16 points <br> Matrix DI: 56 points <br> DO: 56 points <br> MPG interface is supported. |
| Fuse <br> (replacement part) | A03B-0815-K001 | 1A |

Module specifications

| Item | Specification | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| General-purpose DI | 16 points | $24-\mathrm{V}$ input |
| Matrix DI | 56 points $(8 \times 7)$ | $5-\mathrm{V}$ input |
| DO points | 56 points | 24 V source type output |
| CNC interface | FANUC I/O Link <br> connection | Up to 16 modules can be <br> connected as CNC slaves. Or, a <br> maximum of 1024 points can be <br> supported on both the input and <br> output sides. |
| MPG interface | Max. 3 units | MPG interface can be used only <br> for the $i$ series CNC. |

Power supply rating

| Module | Supply voltage | Current rating | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Operator's panel <br> I/O module | 24 VDC $\pm 10 \%$ supplied <br> from the power supply <br> connector CPD1. The <br> allowance of $\pm 10 \%$ <br> should include <br> instantaneous voltage <br> and ripple voltage. | 0.35 A | The total power <br> consumption of <br> DI points is <br> included. <br> (This is true <br> when all general <br> DI points are <br> turned on.) <br> The power <br> consumption of <br> DO points is not <br> included. |

DI (input signal) specifications
(General-purpose input signal)

| Contact rating | 30 VDC, 16 mA or more |
| :--- | :--- |
| Open circuit intercontact <br> leakage current | 1 mA or less (at 26.4 V ) |
| Closed circuit intercontact <br> voltage drop | 2 V or less <br> (including cable voltage drop) |
| Delay | Receiver delay: Max. 2 ms <br> The time required for I/O Link transmission <br> between the CNC and I/O module (max. $2 \mathrm{~ms}+$ <br> CNC ladder scan cycle) must also be taken into <br> account. |

(Matrix input signal)

| Contact rating | $6 \mathrm{VDC}, 2 \mathrm{~mA}$ or more |
| :--- | :--- |
| Open circuit intercontact <br> leakage current | 0.2 mA or less (at 6 V ) |
| Closed circuit intercontact <br> voltage drop | 0.9 V or less (with a current of 1 mA ) |
| Delay | The maximum matrix period of 16 ms, the <br> maximum time of $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ Link transfer between CNC <br> and I/O module of 2 ms, and the ladder scanning <br> period (by CNC) must be considered. |

## NOTE

When detour prevention diodes are used, the voltage drop across closed contacts indicated above must be maintained, including the diode voltage drop.

DO (output signal) specifications

| Maximum load current in ON state | 200 mA or less <br> (including momentary current) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Saturation voltage in ON state | Max. 1 V (when load current is 200 mA ) |
| Withstand voltage | $24 \mathrm{~V}+20 \%$ or less <br> (including momentary values) |
| Leakage current in OFF state | $20 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ or less |
| Delay | Driver delay: Max. $50 ~ \mu \mathrm{~s}$ <br> The time required for I/O Link transmission <br> between the CNC and I/O module (max. 2 <br> ms + CNC ladder scan cycle) must also be <br> taken into account. |

## NOTE

Ensure that the maximum current per DOCOM pin (DO power supply pin) does not exceed 0.7 A.

### 9.5.10

Other Notes

DO signal reaction to a system alarm

If a system alarm occurs in the CNC using the operator's panel I/O module, or if I/O Link communication between the CNC and operator's panel I/O module fails, all the DO signals of the I/O module are turned off. Therefore, sufficient care is necessary when setting up the machine sequence. Also, the same phenomenon occurs if the power to the CNC or the I/O module is turned off.

Address allocation
For the operator's panel I/O module, I/O addresses are mapped as follows.

| DI space map |  |
| :--- | :--- |
| Xm | General-purpose |
| input signal |  |


| DO space map |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Yn | Output signal |
| Yn+1 |  |
| Yn+2 |  |
| Yn+3 |  |
| $Y n+4$ |  |
| Yn+5 |  |
| $Y \mathrm{n}+6$ |  |
| Yn+7 | Reserved |

The operator's panel I/O module is allocated a group of DI addresses (16 bytes) and a group of DO addresses ( 8 bytes). This address allocation is explained below.
The MPG interface (MPG counter) occupies DI space from Xm +12 through $\mathrm{Xm}+14$. These addresses are fixed, and $\mathrm{Xm}+12$ through $\mathrm{Xm}+14$ must be allocated as a DI work area to enable the use of the MPG. Therefore, when using an MPG for the $i$ series CNC, allocate DI addresses in units of 16 bytes. Do not use the DI space from Xm+12 through Xm+14 for Ladder; the CNC processes the MPG counter value directly.
DI address $\mathrm{Xm}+15$ is used for detecting overcurrent and overheating alarms that may occur in the IC used in the DO driver. [For details, see the section describing the detection of DO (output signal) alarms.] This address is fixed, and must be allocated as a work area before it can be used. Therefore, when using this area, allocate DI addresses in units of 16 bytes. Basically, I/O addresses can be allocated to the operator's panel I/O module freely. When allocating DI addresses, however, consider also the fixed addresses that are directly supervised by the CNC, and keep the following in mind.

Fixed addresses directly supervised by the CNC

|  | $\mathbf{7}$ | $\mathbf{6}$ | $\mathbf{5}$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| X0004 | SKIP | ESKIP <br> SKIP6 | - MIT2 <br> SKIP5 | +MIT2 <br> SKIP4 | - MIT1 <br> SKIP3 | +MIT1 <br> SKIP2 | ZAE <br> SKIP8 | XAE <br> SKIP7 |
|  | SKIP | ESKIP <br> SKIP6 | SKIP5 | SKIP4 | SKIP3 | ZAE <br> SKIP2 | YAE <br> SKIP8 | XAE <br> SKIP7 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X0006 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X0007 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X0008 |  |  |  | *ESP |  |  |  |  |
| X0009 |  |  |  |  | *DEC4 | *DEC3 | *DEC2 | *DEC1 |

The upper row indicates those signals used for the T series. Those in the lower row are for the M series.

When DI addresses are allocated in units of 16 bytes, starting at X0008

| X0008 | General-purpose <br> input signal |
| :--- | :--- |
| X0009 | Reserved |
| X0010 |  |
| X0011 | Matrix input |
| signal |  |

Although fixed signals such as SKIP cannot be used, allocating DI addresses starting from X0008 allows the *DECn signal to be used and the *ESP fixed signal to be allocated to an address for which the common voltage is fixed to 24 V . (Fixed signals cannot be allocated to the for the matrix input signals.)

Turning the DO (output signal) power on and off (DOCOM)

All the DO signals can be turned off simultaneously by turning off (opening) the DO (output signal) power supply pin "DOCOM". Doing so causes the DO signal status to change as shown below.


## NOTE

When the DO signal is in the ON state in the sequence, the ON or OFF state of the DOCOM pin determines the state of the signal, as indicated by the dotted lines in the above figure. Do not turn off the +24 V supply, provided by the CPD1 to the I/O module, during the operation. Turning off the +24 V supply would cause a CNC communication alarm. When turning on the power, the +24 V supply to the I/O module must be turned on before or at the same time as the power supply to the CNC. When turning off the power, the +24 V supply to the I/O module must be turned off after or at the same time as the power supply to the CNC.

## Parallel DO (output signal) connection

The DO load current can be doubled by connecting two DO points in parallel and turning them on and off simultaneously in sequence, as shown in the figure below. The maximum load current per DI point is 200 mA . Connecting two DO points in parallel and turning them on at the same time produces a current of 400 mA . Note that, however, when two DO points are connected in parallel, the leakage current also doubles while they are off (max. $40 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ ).


DO (output signal) alarm detection

The DO driver of the I/O module is capable of detecting an overcurrent and measuring its own temperature. If an accident, such as connecting the cable to ground, causes an abnormal increase in the load current or in the driver temperature, a protection circuit, which is provided for each DO driver ( 1 byte), is activated which keeps the DO signal for the relevant 1 byte in the OFF state until the cause of the problem is eliminated. Even if this occurs, the CNC and the I/O module continue operating. The DI address $(\mathrm{Xm}+15)$ identifies which DO driver has detected an alarm. The following table shows the correspondence between the DI address $(\mathrm{Xm}+15)$ bits and the DO addresses. Bit value " 1 " indicates that the corresponding DO driver has detected an alarm. The contents of the $\mathrm{Xm}+15$ area can be checked by using the DGN screen of the CNC or by performing the alarm processing for the area in advance by using Ladder. This helps alarm detection and recovery.

| Alarm detection address <br> and bit | DO address | Remarks |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0$ |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.1$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1$ |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+2$ |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.3$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3$ |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+4$ |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.5$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+5$ |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+6$ |  |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.7$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+7$ | Reserved |  |
|  |  |  |  |

## 9.6

CONNECTION OF OPERATOR'S PANEL
I/O MODULE AND POWER MAGNETICS CABINET I/O MODULE

The difference between the operator's panel I/O module and the power magnetics cabinet I/O module lies in whether an interface to a manual pulse generator is provided. The power magnetics cabinet does not provide an interface to a manual pulse generator.

### 9.6.1

## Overall Connection

Diagram


## NOTE

The MPG can be connected to this operator's panel I/O module only when the $i$ series CNC is used. When the operator's panel I/O module is used together with a unit (connector panel I/O module) connected to the I/O Link supporting another MPG interface, only the MPG interface of the unit (module) closest to the CNC connected to the I/O Link is enabled. The following screw type connectors cannot be used to connect the I/O Link or MPG.

Connectors that cannot be used on the cable side

|  | Specification | Manufacturer |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Connector | FI-20-CV7 | Hirose Electric Co., Ltd. |
| Connector case and connector | FI30-20S-CV7 | Hirose Electric Co., Ltd. |

### 9.6.2 <br> Power Connection

Provide the CPD1 (IN) connector, shown below, with the power necessary for the printed circuit board operation and that for DI operation. To facilitate power division, the power is output to CPD1 (OUT) exactly as it is input from CPD1 (IN). When power division is required, use CPD1 (OUT).
Up to 1.0 A can be supplied by branching.


Recommended cable-side connector: A02B-0120-K324 (including the following connector housing and case) (Housing: Japan AMP 1-178288-3) (Contacts: Japan AMP 1-175218-5)

## NOTE

The specification of the power supply connector CPD1 (IN) is the same as that for CPD1 (OUT). There are no indications on the printed circuit board to distinguish between the IN and OUT connectors. Do not turn off the +24 V supply to the connector during operation. Turning off the +24 V supply will cause a CNC communication alarm. When turning on the power, the +24 V supply to the I/O module must be turned on before or at the same time as the power supply to the CNC. When turning off the power, the +24 V supply to the I/O module must be turned off after or at the same time as the power supply to the CNC.

### 9.6.3

## DI/DO Connector Pin Arrangement

| CE56 |  |  | CE57 |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | A | B |  | A | B |
| 01 | OV | +24V | 01 | OV | +24V |
| 02 | Xm+0.0 | Xm+0.1 | 02 | Xm+3.0 | Xm+3.1 |
| 03 | Xm+0.2 | Xm+0.3 | 03 | Xm+3.2 | Xm+3.3 |
| 04 | Xm+0.4 | Xm+0.5 | 04 | Xm+3.4 | Xm+3.5 |
| 05 | Xm+0.6 | Xm+0.7 | 05 | Xm+3.6 | Xm+3.7 |
| 06 | Xm+1.0 | Xm+1.1 | 06 | Xm+4.0 | Xm+4.1 |
| 07 | Xm+1.2 | Xm+1.3 | 07 | Xm+4.2 | Xm+4.3 |
| 08 | Xm+1.4 | Xm+1.5 | 08 | Xm+4.4 | Xm+4.5 |
| 09 | Xm+1.6 | Xm+1.7 | 09 | Xm+4.6 | Xm+4.7 |
| 10 | Xm+2.0 | Xm+2.1 | 10 | Xm+5.0 | Xm+5.1 |
| 11 | Xm+2.2 | Xm+2.3 | 11 | Xm+5.2 | Xm+5.3 |
| 12 | Xm+2.4 | Xm+2.5 | 12 | Xm+5.4 | Xm+5.5 |
| 13 | Xm+2.6 | Xm+2.7 | 13 | Xm+5.6 | Xm+5.7 |
| 14 | DICOM0 |  | 14 |  | DICOM5 |
| 15 |  |  | 15 |  |  |
| 16 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.1$ | 16 | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.1$ |
| 17 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.3$ | 17 | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.3$ |
| 18 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.5$ | 18 | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.5$ |
| 19 | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0.7$ | 19 | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+2.7$ |
| 20 | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.1$ | 20 | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.1$ |
| 21 | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.3$ | 21 | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.3$ |
| 22 | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.5$ | 22 | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.5$ |
| 23 | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1.7$ | 23 | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3.7$ |
| 24 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 24 | DOCOM | DOCOM |
| 25 | DOCOM | DOCOM | 25 | DOCOM | DOCOM |
| Flat cable-side connector specification: <br> A02B-0120-K342 <br> (HIF3BB-50D-2.54R (Hirose Electric Co., Ltd.)) <br> 50 contacts <br> Cable material specification: <br> A02B-0120-K886 <br> (61-meter, $50-$ pin cable <br> (Hitachi Cable, Ltd. or Oki Electric Cable Co., Ltd.)) |  |  |  |  |  |

## NOTE

An output DC voltage of +24 V at CE56 (B01) and CE57 (B01) is for DI signals. Do not supply 24 VDC to these pins from the outside.

### 9.6.4

## DI (General-purpose

Input Signal)

## Connection





## NOTE

$1 \mathrm{Xm}+0.0$ through $\mathrm{Xm}+0.7$ and $\mathrm{Xm}+5.0$ through $\mathrm{Xm}+5.7$ are DI pins for which a common voltage can be selected. That is, by connecting the DICOM0 CE56(A14) or DICOM5 CE57(B14) pin to the +24 V power supply, a DI signal can be input with its logical state reversed. If, however, a cable is connected to ground, it has the same effect as inputting an ON state DI signal. To prevent this from occurring, the connection of the DICOM0 CE56(A14) and DICOM5 CE57(B14) pins to the 0 V power supply is recommended whereever possible.
For safety reasons, the emergency stop signal needs to be allocated to an appropriate bit of the addresses for which the common voltage is fixed. See "Address allocation" in Section 9.6.9 for details of how to allocate the emergency stop signal.
For unused DI pins allocated to the addresses for which the common voltage is fixed, the logic is fixed to " 0 ". For unused pins allocated to the addresses for which the common voltage can be selected, the logic is fixed to " 0 " when the DICOM0 CE56(A14) or DICOM5 CE57(B14) pin is connected to the 0 V power supply. When the DICOM0 CE56(A14) or DICOM5 CE57(B14) pin is connected to the +24 V power supply, the logic is fixed to " 1 ". The logic of the unused pins is variable when the contacts of the DICOM0 CE56(A14) and DICOM5 CE57(B14) pins are open.
2 An output DC voltage of +24 V at CE56 (B01) and CE57 (B01) is for DI signals. Do not supply 24 VDC to these pins from the outside.

### 9.6.5

## DO (Output Signal)

Connection



### 9.6.6 Manual Pulse Generator Connection <br> For details of the connection of the manual pulse generator, see Section 9.4.15.

### 9.6.7

## External View



I : Polarity guide
: A1 pin mark


### 9.6.8

Specifications

Installation specifications

| Ambient temperature | During operation $0^{\circ}$ to $58^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> During storage and transportation $-20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ <br> Temperature change <br> Relative humidity <br> Max. $1.1^{\circ} \mathrm{C} / \mathrm{min}$. <br> Vibration <br> Normal: $75 \%$ or less <br> Short term (1 month or less): $95 \%$ or less <br> Dnvironment <br> During operation: 0.5 G or less <br> Ordinary machining factory environment (Special <br> consideration is required when installing the module in <br> a dusty place or where highly concentrated cutting <br> lubricant or organic solvent is used.) <br> Other requirements (1) Install the I/O module in a fully enclosed cabinet. |
| :--- | :--- |

Ordering specifications

| Item | Specification | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Operator's panel <br> I/O module <br> (with MPG interface) | A20B-2002-0520 | DI: 48 points <br> DO: 32 points <br> MPG interface is supported. |
| Power magnetics panel <br> I/O module <br> (without MPG interface) | A20B-2002-0521 | DI: 48 points <br> DO: 32 points <br> MPG interface is not <br> supported. |
| Fuse (replacement part) | A03B-0815-K001 | 1A |

Module specifications

| Item | Specification | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| DI points | 48 points | 24 V input |
| DO points | 32 points | 24 V source type output |
| CNC interface | FANUC I/O Link <br> connection | Up to 16 modules can be <br> connected as CNC slaves. <br> Or, a maximum of 1024 points <br> can be supported on both the <br> input and output sides. |
| MPG interface | Max. 3 units | MPG interface can be used <br> only for the $i$ series CNC. |

Power supply rating

| Module | Supply voltage | Power supply <br> rating | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Operator's <br> panel I/O <br> module and <br> power <br> magnetics <br> cabinet I/O <br> module | 24 VDC $\pm 10 \%$ is <br> supplied from <br> power supply <br> connector CPD1. <br> The tolerance of <br> $\pm 10 \%$ includes <br> momentary and <br> ripple currents. | $0.3 \mathrm{~A}+7.3 \mathrm{~mA} \times \mathrm{DI}$ | $\mathrm{DI}=$ number of DI <br> points in the ON <br> state |

DI (input signal) specifications
(general-purpose input signal)

| Contact rating | $30 \mathrm{VDC}, 16 \mathrm{~mA}$ or more |
| :--- | :--- |
| Open circuit intercontact leakage <br> current | 1 mA or less (at 26.4 V ) |
| Closed circuit intercontact voltage <br> drop | 2 V or less <br> (including cable voltage drop) |
| Delay | Receiver delay: Max. 2 ms <br> The time required for I/O Link <br> transmission between the CNC and I/O <br> module (max. 2 ms + CNC ladder scan <br> cycle) must also be taken into account. |

DO (output signal) specifications

| Maximum load current in ON state | 200 mA or less <br> (including momentary current) |
| :--- | :--- |
| Saturation voltage in ON state | Max. 1 V <br> (when load current is 200 mA ) |
| Withstand voltage | $24 \mathrm{~V}+20 \%$ or less <br> (including momentary values) |
| Leakage current in OFF state | $20 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ or less |
| Delay | Driver delay: Max. $50 \mu \mathrm{~s}$ <br> The time for I/O Link transmission <br> between the CNC and I/O module (max. <br> 2 ms + CNC ladder scan cycle) must <br> also be taken into account. |

## NOTE

Ensure that the maximum current per DOCOM pin (DO power supply pin) does not exceed 0.7 A .

### 9.6.9

Other Notes

## DO signal reaction to a system alarm

If a system alarm occurs in a CNC using this 48/32-point I/O module, or if I/O Link communication between the CNC and operator's panel I/O module fails, all the DO signals of the I/O module are turned off. Therefore, due care must be taken when setting up the machine sequence. Also, the same phenomenon occurs if the power of the CNC or the I/O module is turned off.

For the operator's panel I/O module, I/O addresses are mapped as follows.

| DI space map |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| Xm | Input signal |
| Xm+1 |  |
| Xm+2 |  |
| Xm+3 |  |
| Xm+4 |  |
| Xm+5 |  |
| Xm+6 | Not used |
| Xm+7 |  |
| Xm+8 |  |
| Xm+9 |  |
| Xm+10 |  |
| Xm+11 |  |
| Xm+12 (for 1st MPG) | MPG |
| Xm+13 (for 2nd MPG) |  |
| Xm+14 (for 3rd MPG) |  |
| Xm+15 (DO alarm detection) | DO alarm detection |

DO space map

| Yn |  |
| :---: | :--- |
| $\mathrm{Y}+1$ | Output signal |
| +2 |  |
| $\mathrm{Yn}+3$ |  |

Basically, this 48/32-point I/O module is allocated a group of DI addresses ( 16 bytes) and a group of DO addresses ( 4 bytes). This address allocation is explained below.
The MPG interface (MPG counter) occupies DI space from Xm+12 through $\mathrm{Xm}+14$. These addresses are fixed, and $\mathrm{Xm}+12$ through $\mathrm{Xm}+14$ must be allocated as a DI work area to enable the use of the MPG. Therefore, when using an MPG for the $i$ series CNC, allocate DI addresses in units of 16 bytes. Do not use the DI space from Xm+12 through Xm+14 for Ladder; the CNC processes the MPG counter value directly.
DI address $\mathrm{Xm}+15$ is used for detecting overcurrent and overheating alarms that occur in the IC used in the DO driver. (For details, see the section describing the detection of DO (output signal) alarms.) This address is fixed, and must be allocated as a work area before it can be used. When using this area, therefore, allocate DI addresses in units of 16 bytes.
Basically, I/O addresses can be allocated to the 48/32-point I/O module freely. When allocating DI addresses, however, consider also the fixed addresses that are directly supervised by the CNC , and keep the following in mind.

Fixed addresses directly supervised by the CNC

|  | $\mathbf{7}$ | $\mathbf{6}$ | $\mathbf{5}$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{0}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| X0004 | SKIP | ESKIP <br> SKIP6 | -MIT2 <br> SKIP5 | +MIT2 <br> SKIP4 | -MIT1 <br> SKIP3 | +MIT1 <br> SKIP2 | ZAE <br> SKIP8 | XAE <br> SKIP7 |
|  | SKIP | ESKIP <br> SKIP6 | SKIP5 | SKIP4 | SKIP3 | ZAE <br> SKIP2 | YAE <br> SKIP8 | XAE <br> SKIP7 |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X0006 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X0007 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| X0008 |  |  |  | *ESP |  |  |  |  |
| X0009 |  |  |  |  | *DEC4 | *DEC3 | *DEC2 | *DEC1 |

The upper row indicates those signals used for the T series. Those in the lower row are for the M series.

When DI addresses are allocated in units of 16 bytes, starting at X0004

| X0004 | Input signal | $\qquad$ *ESP fixed signal <br> *DECn fixed signal |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| X0005 |  |  |
| X0006 |  |  |
| X0007 |  |  |
| X0008 |  |  |
| X0009 |  |  |
| X0010 | Not used |  |
| X0011 |  |  |
| X0012 |  |  |
| X0013 |  |  |
| X0014 |  | ------ |
| X0015 |  | ' Allocaing Dl addreses from X0004 alows the fixad signas, |
| X0016 (for 1st MPG) | MPG | Allocating DI addresses from X0004 allows the fixed signals, |
| X0017 (for 2nd MPG) |  | - such as SKIP and *DECn, to be used and the *ESP fixed |
| X0018 (for 3rd MPG) |  | - signal to be allocated to an address for which the common |
| X0019 (DO alarm detection) | DO alarm detection | voltage in fixed to 24 V . |

Turning the DO (output signal) power on and off (DOCOM)

All the DO signals can be turned off simultaneously by turning off (opening) the DO (output signal) power supply pin "DOCOM". Doing so causes the DO signal status to change as shown below.


## NOTE

When the DO signal is in the ON state in the sequence, the ON or OFF state of the DOCOM pin determines the state of the signal, as shown within dotted lines in the above figure. Do not turn off the +24 V supply provided by the CPD1 to the $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ module during the operation. Turning off the +24 V supply causes a CNC communication alarm. When turning on the power, the +24 V supply to the I/O module must be turned on before or at the same time as the power supply to the CNC. When turning off the power, the +24 V supply to the I/O module must be turned off after or at the same time as the power supply to the CNC.

The DO load current can be doubled by connecting two DO points in parallel and turning them on and off simultaneously in sequence, as shown in the figure below. The maximum load current per DI point is 200 mA . Connecting two DO points in parallel and turning them on at the same time produces a current of 400 mA . Note that, however, when two DO points are connected in parallel, the leakage current also doubles when they are off (max. $40 \mu \mathrm{~A}$ ).


DO (output signal) alarm detection

The DO driver of the I/O module is capable of detecting an overcurrent and measuring its own temperature. If an accident, such as the connecting of the cable to ground, causes an abnormal increase in the load current or in the driver temperature, a protection circuit, which is provided for each DO driver ( 1 byte), is activated and keeps the DO signal for the relevant 1 byte in the OFF state until the cause of the problem is eliminated. Even if this occurs, the CNC and I/O module continue operating. The DI address $(\mathrm{Xm}+15)$ identifies the DO driver which has detected the alarm. The following table shows the correspondence between the DI address $(\mathrm{Xm}+15)$ bits and the DO addresses. Bit value " 1 " indicates that the corresponding DO driver has detected an alarm. The contents of the $\mathrm{Xm}+15$ area can be checked by using the DGN screen of the CNC or by performing alarm processing for the area in advance by using Ladder. This helps alarm detection and recovery.

| Alarm detection address <br> and bit | DO address | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.0$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+0$ |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.1$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+1$ |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.2$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+2$ |  |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.3$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+3$ | Reserved |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.4$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+4$ | Reserved |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.5$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+5$ | Reserved |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.6$ | $\mathrm{Yn}+6$ | Reserved |
| $\mathrm{Xm}+15.7$ |  |  |

9.7 CONNECTION OF SOURCE OUTPUT TYPE CONNECTION UNIT

The operator's panel connection unit (A16B-2202-0730, 0731), which connects to the control unit via the FANUC I/O Link, acts as an interface with the machine operator's panel.
Connectors CM51, CM52, CMB3, and CMB4, used to interface with the operator's panel, feature an electrical interface and pin assignment which are fully compatible with those of the source type output operator's panel connection unit for the Series 15. The following two units are available with different numbers of I/O points:

| Specifications | No. of input points | No. of output points |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| A16B-2202-0730 | 96 | 64 |
| A16B-2202-0731 | 64 | 32 |



## CAUTION

Use 30/0.18 ( $0.75 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}$ ) or heavier wire as the power cable.

### 9.7.1

 Input Signal Specifications for Source Output Type Connection UnitMost input signals for the source output type connection unit support a sink type non-isolated interface. For some input signals, however, either sink or source type can be selected. (European safety standards demand the use of sink types.)
The machine's contacts shall conform to the following specifications:
Capacity: 30 VDC, 16 mA or higher
Intercontact leakage current in closed circuit:
1 mA or less (at 26.4 V )
Intercontact voltage drop in closed circuit:
2 V or less (including the voltage drop in the cables)


Circuit of input receiver for which common voltage can be selected


Fig. 9.7.1 (a) Receiver circuit
Always connect both DICMN1 and DICMN2 to 24 V or 0 V. Do not leave them open.


Fig. 9.7.1 (b) Signal width and delay of input signal
In the above figure, logical 0 corresponds to open contacts, while logical 1 corresponds to closed contacts.

## WARNING

When a source interface is used, a ground fault in an input signal has the same effect as closing the contacts. From the viewpoint of safety, therefore, FANUC does not recommend the use of such an interface for input signals.
9.7.2 Output Signal Specifications for Source Output Type Connection Unit

The output signals shall satisfy the following:
Maximum load current when driver is on: 200 mA (including momentary values)
Saturation voltage when driver is on: 1.0 V max.

Withstand voltage: $24 \mathrm{~V}+20 \%$ (including momentary values) Leakage current when driver is off: $100 \mu \mathrm{~A}$

Prepare the following external power supply for the output signals:
Supply voltage: $+24 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$
Supply current (per board):
At least total maximum load current (including momentary values) +100 mA
Power-on timing: At the same time as or before turning on the power to the control unit
Power-off timing: At the same time as or after turning on the power to the control unit

## CAUTION

A power supply which satisfies the above specifications shall be connected to the DOCOM and OV power supply terminals for the output signals. The maximum current that can be carried by the DOCOM pin is 2.0 A . The total load current must not exceed this value, therefore.

## Output signal driver

## NOTE

The above red LED and alarm transfer to the CNC are supported by PCBs of version 03B and later.

If the output of a signal cannot be turned on even though the CNC diagnostic indicates that the signal is on, that signal or another signal being handled by the same element may be overloaded, thus causing the eight output signals to be turned off. In such a case, turn the system power off and eliminate the cause of the overload.

## - Driver element block diagram



The power for operating this driver element is supplied from DOCOM (24 VDC).

Notes on output signals

## CAUTION

Observe the following precautions when connecting output signals:
Output pins shall not be connected in parallel, as shown below.


## CAUTION

When using a dimming resistor, connect a diode to prevent leakage.


### 9.7.3

## Connector Pin Layout

for Source Output Type Connection Unit


| CM52 |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | DI60 |  |  | 33 | OV |
| 2 | DI63 | 19 | DI61 | 34 | DI62 |
| 3 | D166 | 20 |  | 35 | D165 |
| 4 | DI71 | 21 | D164 | 36 | DI70 |
| 5 | DI74 | 22 | DI72 | 37 | DI73 |
| 6 | DI77 | 23 | DI75 | 38 | DI76 |
| 7 | DI82 | 24 | DI80 | 39 | D181 |
| 8 | DI85 | 25 | DI83 | 40 | D184 |
| 9 | D187 | 26 | D190 | 41 | D186 |
| 10 | DI92 | 27 | DI93 | 42 | D191 |
| 11 | D195 | 28 | D196 | 43 | D194 |
| 12 | DIAO | 29 |  | 44 | D197 |
| 13 | DIA3 |  | DIA4 | 45 | DIA2 |
| 14 | DIA6 | 31 | DIA7 | 46 | DIA5 |
| 15 | DIB1 | 32 | DIB2 | 47 | DIB0 |
| 16 | DIB4 |  |  | 48 | DIB3 |
| 17 | DIB6 |  |  | 49 | DIB5 |
| 18 | +24V |  |  | 50 | DIB7 |

CMB3

| 1 | DO00 |  | 33 | OV |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | DO03 | D001 | 34 | DO02 |
| 3 | D006 | DO0 | 35 | DO05 |
| 4 | DO11 | DO07 | 36 | DO10 |
| 5 | DO14 |  | 37 | DO13 |
| 6 | DO17 |  | 38 | DO16 |
| 7 | DO22 |  | 39 | DO21 |
| 8 | DO25 | -020 | 40 | DO24 |
| 9 | DO27 |  | 41 | DO26 |
| 10 | DO32 |  | 42 | DO31 |
| 11 | DO35 |  | 43 | DO34 |
| 12 | DO40 |  | 44 | DO37 |
| 13 | DO43 |  | 45 | DO42 |
| 14 | DO46 | DO44 | 46 | DO45 |
| 15 | DO51 | DO47 | 47 | DO50 |
| 16 | DO54 | DO52 | 48 | DO53 |
| 17 | DOCOM |  | 49 | DO55 |
| 18 | DICMN2 |  | 50 | DOCOM |

CMB4

| 1 | DO61 | 8 | DO62 | 14 | DO60 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | DO64 |  |  | 15 | D063 |
| 3 | DO67 | 9 | DO65 | 16 | DO66 |
| 4 | DO72 | 10 | DO70 | 17 | DO71 |
| 5 | D075 | 11 | D073 | 18 | DO74 |
| 6 | DO56 | 12 | DO76 | 19 | DO77 |
| 7 | OV | 13 | DO57 | 20 | DOCOM |

## NOTE

When the operator's panel connection unit having 64 Dls and 32 DOs is selected, connector CMB4 is not mounted on the PCB .

DICMN1, DICMN2: Pins used to switch the DI common. Usually, jumper these pins with 0 V . (input)
$+24 \mathrm{~V}: \quad+24$ VDC output pin. This pin shall be used only for DI signals input to the operator's panel connection unit. (output)
DOCOM: Power supply for the DO driver. All DOCOM pins are connected in the unit. (input)

1/O addresses
The following PMC addresses are assigned to the operator's panel connection unit, depending on the number of I/O points (DI/DO $=96 / 64$ or $64 / 32$ ):

| [DI address] |  |  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | Xp | D107 | DI06 | DI05 | DI04 | DI03 | DI02 | DI01 | DIOO |
|  |  | DI: $\quad \mathrm{Xp}+1$ | DI17 | DI16 | DI15 | DI14 | DI13 | DI12 | DI11 | DI10 |
|  | points | points $\mathrm{Xp}+2$ | DI27 | DI26 | DI25 | DI24 | DI23 | DI22 | DI21 | DI20 |
|  |  | Xp+3 | DI37 | DI36 | DI35 | DI34 | DI33 | DI32 | DI331 | DI30 |
|  |  | Xp+4 | DI47 | DI46 | DI45 | DI44 | DI43 | DI42 | DI41 | DI40 |
|  |  | Xp+5 | DI57 | DI56 | DI55 | DI54 | DI53 | DI52 | DI51 | DI50 |
|  |  | Xp+6 | D167 | DI66 | D165 | DI64 | DI63 | DI62 | DI61 | DI60 |
|  |  | Xp+7 | DI77 | DI76 | DI75 | DI74 | DI73 | DI72 | DI71 | DI70 |
|  |  | Xp+8 | DI87 | DI86 | DI85 | DI84 | DI83 | DI82 | DI81 | DI80 |
|  |  | X $\mathrm{p}+9$ | D197 | D196 | D195 | D194 | DI93 | DI92 | D191 | DI90 |
|  |  | Xp+10 | DIA7 | DIA6 | DIA5 | DIA4 | DIA3 | DIA2 | DIA1 | DIA0 |
|  |  | Xp+11 | DIB7 | DIB6 | DIB5 | DIB4 | DIB3 | DIB2 | DIB1 | DIB0 |

- Address p is determined by the machine tool builder.
- The common voltage can be selected for the DIs assigned to the following 20 addresses:

| Address | Common signal to correspond |
| :--- | :---: |
| $p+0.0, X p+0.1, X p+0.2, X p+0.7$ <br> $X p+1.0, X p+1.1, X p+1.2, X p+1.7$ | DICMN1 |
| $X p+4.0$ to $X p+4.7$ | DICMN2 |
| $X p+11.4, X p+11.5, X p+11.6, X p+11.7$ | DICMN1 |


| [DO address] |  |  | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | DO: 64 points | Y q | DO07 | DO06 | DO05 | DO04 | DO03 | DO02 | DO01 | DO00 |
|  |  | DO: $\mathrm{Yq}+1$ | DO17 | DO16 | DO15 | DO14 | DO13 | DO12 | DO11 | DO10 |
|  |  | points $\mathrm{Y} q+2$ | DO27 | DO26 | DO25 | DO24 | DO23 | DO22 | DO21 | DO20 |
|  |  | Y q + 3 | DO37 | DO36 | DO35 | DO34 | DO33 | DO32 | DO31 | DO30 |
|  |  | Y q +4 | DO47 | DO46 | DO45 | DO44 | DO43 | DO42 | DO41 | DO40 |
|  |  | Yq+5 | DO57 | DO56 | DO55 | DO54 | DO53 | DO52 | DO51 | DO50 |
|  |  | Y q+6 | DO67 | DO66 | DO65 | DO64 | DO63 | DO62 | DO61 | DO60 |
|  |  | Y q +7 | DO77 | DO76 | DO75 | DO74 | D073 | DO72 | D071 | DO70 |

Address q is determined by the machine tool builder.
For details of address assignment, refer to the FANUC PMC Programming Manual (Ladder Language) (B-61863E).

### 9.7.4

## Dimensions of Source

Output Type

## Connection Unit



The following LEDs, fuses, variable resistors, and setting pins are mounted on the PCB:
[LEDs]
DB1 (green, pilot) : Lights while the power to the PCB is on.
DB2 (red, alarm) : Lights if an error occurs in the PCB or CNC.
DAL1 to DAL8 : See Subsec. 9.7.2
[Variable resistors]
VR1 and VR2 : Factory-set by FANUC. The machine tool builder need not adjust these resistors.
[Setting pin]
CP1
: Used to specify whether the CNC will be notified of a DO signal error as a system alarm (see Subsec. 9.7.2).

## 9.8 <br> CONNECTING THE FANUC SERVO UNIT $\beta$ SERIES WITH I/O Link

### 9.8.1 <br> Overview

The FANUC servo unit $\beta$ series with I/O Link (called the $\beta$ amplifier with I/O Link) is a power motion control servo unit that can be easily connected to a CNC control unit via the FANUC I/O Link.
The $\beta$ amplifier with I/O Link can be connected to the Series $0 i$ using the FANUC I/O Link.
For the Series $0 i$ Mate, however, only one $\beta$ amplifier with I/O Link can be connected.

### 9.8.2 Connection <br> The $\beta$ amplifier with I/O Link is connected to the Series 0i using the usual FANUC I/O Link connection.



FANUC Servo unit $\beta i$ series with I/O Link


I/O-Link cable


### 9.8.3 <br> Maximum Number of Units that can be Connected

The maximum number of $\beta$ amplifiers with I/O Link that can be connected to a control unit depends on the maximum number of FANUC I/O Link points provided by that control unit, as well as their assignments. For the Series 0i, the maximum number of FANUC I/O Link DI and DO points are 1024 and 1024, respectively. One $\beta$ amplifier with I/O Link occupies $128 \mathrm{DI} / \mathrm{DO}$ points in the FANUC I/O Link. If no units other than the $\beta$ amplifiers with I/OLink are connected to the control unit, up to eight $\beta$ amplifiers can be connected.

### 9.8.4 <br> Address Assignment by Ladder

If the $\beta$ amplifier with I/O Link is used as an I/O Link slave, I/O addresses are assigned in the PMC in the CNC. Because data output from the slave is made in 16-byte units, the number of input/output points must be set to 128 .

The module names are PM16I (input) and PM16O (output).
The BASE is always 0 , and the SLOT is 1 .

## 10

## EMERGENCY STOP SIGNAL

Using the emergency stop signal effectively enables the design of safe machine tools. See "Cautions for configuring emergency stop circuit in compliance with safety standards."
The emergency stop signal is provided to bring a machine tool to an emergency stop. It is input to the CNC controller, servo amplifier, and spindle amplifier. An emergency stop signal is usually generated by closing the B contact of a pushbutton switch.
When the emergency stop signal (*ESP) contact is closed, the CNC controller enters the emergency stop released state, such that the servo and spindle motors can be controlled and operated.
When the emergency stop signal (*ESP) contact opens, the CNC controller is reset and enters the emergency stop state, and the servo and spindle motors are decelerated to a stop.
Shutting off the servo amplifier power causes a dynamic brake to be applied to the servo motor. Even when a dynamic brake is applied, however, a servo motor attached to a vertical axis can move under the force of gravity. To overcome this problem, use a servo motor with a brake.
While the spindle motor is running, shutting off the motor-driving power to the spindle amplifier allows the spindle motor to continue running under its own inertia, which is quite dangerous. When the emergency stop signal (*ESP) contact opens, it is necessary to confirm that the spindle motor has been decelerated to a stop, before the spindle motor power is shut off.
The FANUC servo amplifier $\alpha i$ series products are designed to satisfy the above requirements. The emergency stop signal should be input to the power supply module (called the PSM). The PSM outputs a motor power MCC control signal, which can be used to switch the power applied to the power supply module on and off.
The CNC controller is designed to detect overtravel by using a software limit function. Normally, no hardware limit switch is required to detect overtravel. If the machine goes beyond a software limit because of a servo feedback failure, however, it is necessary to provide a stroke end limit switch, connected so that the emergency stop signal can be used to stop the machine.
Fig. 10 shows an example showing how to use the emergency stop signal with this CNC controller and $\alpha i$ series servo amplifier.


Fig. 10

## WARNING

To use a spindle motor and amplifier produced by a manufacturer other than FANUC, refer to the corresponding documentation as well as this manual. Design the emergency stop sequence such that, if the emergency stop signal contact opens while the spindle motor is rotating, the spindle motor is decelerated until it stops.

> | Cautions for config- |
| :--- |
| uring an emergency |
| stop circuit in com- |
| pliance with safety |
| standards |

To configure an emergency stop circuit in compliance with JIS safety standards $(*)$, observe the following cautions. Compliance with these JIS safety standards is a prerequisite for complying with the EC Machine Instructions.

The method for shutting off the motor power section in the amplifier is based on an IGBT (transistor) rather than an electromechanical scheme. When configuring an emergency stop circuit, therefore, install a line contactor on the power input line for motor power in the power supply module in order to ensure electromechanical shut-off, and apply voltage to the control coil of the contactor via the contactor control output of the power supply module.

A failure in the amplifier may disable the output relay of the power supply module from going off, thus preventing the line contactor from shutting off the power, even when the emergency stop command input (*ESP) of the amplifier becomes low.

To secure motor power shut-off, design the emergency stop circuit in a redundancy configuration. To be specific, the emergency stop circuit must have a direct line contactor shut-off route based on an emergency stop switch that is independent of the shut-off function of the amplifier.

If a spindle amplifier module is used, shutting off the motor power line during spindle rotation disables the spindle from stopping quickly because the power regenerative function does not work, allowing the spindle to coast. So, provide the redundancy circuit mentioned above with a delay function based on an off-delay timer that allows a usual stop time.

Refer to the following material for detailed descriptions about cautions related to safety circuits.

A-71429-S13J: About Requirements for Safety Circuits and Configuration Samples

To get a copy of this material, contact your FANUC sales representative.

## NOTE

Examples of important safety standards. Enclosed in parentheses are corresponding European standards.

JIS/TR B 008 and 009 (EN292-1/2)
General matter related to machine safety JIS B 9960-1 (EN60204-1) Stop categories
JIS B 9705-1:2000 (EN954-1) Safety categories JIS B 9703:2000 (EN418) Emergency stop

11
HIGH-SPEED SERIAL BUS (HSSB)

## 11.1 OVERVIEW

The high-speed serial bus (HSSB) enables the high-speed transfer of large amounts of data between a commercially available IBM PC or compatible personal computer and a CNC, by connecting them via a high-speed optical fiber.
On the CNC, the HSSB interface board is installed in an option slot. On the personal computer, an appropriate interface board is installed.
You can use the FANUC PANEL $i$ instead of a commercial PC. The FANUC PANEL $i$ comes standard with the HSSB interface.

The use of the HSSB requires an IBM PC/AT compatible computer or FANUC intelligent terminal. The machine tool builder or end user is required to procure and maintain the personal computer.
To enable the use of the HSSB, Windows 2000 must have been installed on the personal computer.
FANUC owns the copyright for the HSSB device driver.
The software mentioned above and the contents of the related manuals may not be used or reproduced in part or whole without the prior written permission of FANUC.

## NOTE

1 IBM is a registered trademark of IBM Corp. of the US.
2 Windows 2000 are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corp. of the US.
3 The company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

## 11.3

CONNECTION

## DIAGRAM



The PC interface boards include an ISA bus interface board and a PCI bus interface board.
11.4

PERSONAL COMPUTER SPECIFICATION

## CAUTION

1 The machine tool builder or end user is required to procure and maintain the personal computer.
2 FANUC is not liable for any problems resulting from the operation of users' personal computers, regardless of whether the operations are normal or abnormal.
11.4.1

Specification of Personal Computer in Case that the Interface Board of ISA Type are Used

- This interface board for the personal computer is based on the ISA specifications and it can be used into IBM-PC/AT or full compatible computer. (CPU of the computer must be more than 486.)
- The HSSB interface board uses 16 bytes of I/O space defined with rotary switch as mentioned in "MAINTENANCE - Setting of Switched". The other ISA extension boards that use the same resource with HSSB board can not be used.
- Driver installation is required for using HSSB interface board. The driver for the HSSB interface board is included in "Open CNC Driver Libraries Disk (order specification is A02B-0207-K730).
- Please examine the connection test including the communication between the personal computer and CNC controller sufficiently.
- Following shows the required power of the interface board for ISA type.

| 1ch version | $+5 \mathrm{~V}, 1 \mathrm{~A}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2ch version | $+5 \mathrm{~V}, 1.5 \mathrm{~A}$ |

### 11.4.2

 Specification of Personal Computer in Case that the Interface Board of PCI Type are Used- This interface board for the personal computer is based on the PCI specifications and it can be used into a computer with PCI slot (5V, ISA slot type).
- Driver installation is required for using HSSB interface board. The driver for the HSSB interface board is included in "Open CNC Driver Libraries Disk (order specification is A02B-0207-K730). The revision of the driver must be Edition 1.6 or later for the board of PCI type.
- Please examine the connection test including the communication between the personal computer and CNC controller sufficiently.
- Following shows the required power of the interface board for PCI type.

| 1ch version | $+5 \mathrm{~V}, 0.8 \mathrm{~A}$ |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2ch version | $+5 \mathrm{~V}, 1.0 \mathrm{~A}$ |

11.5

INSTALLATION ENVIRONMENT
(1) HSSB Interface Board For Personal Computer

| Ambient | Operating | $: 0$ to $55^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| :---: | :--- | :--- |
| Temperature | Non-operating | $:-20$ to $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| Humidity | Usual : <br>  <br>  <br> Short-term (within one month) | $: 10$ to $75 \%$ (non-condensing) |
|  | to $95 \%$ (non-condensing) |  |

If the environmental requirement of the using personal computer is different from the above, please keep the environmental requirement to be satisfied by the both equipments.
(2) HSSB Interface Board For CNC

Please strictly keep environmental requirement about each CNC controller in which the interface boards are installed.

## WARNING

Before starting to mount or remove a personal computer interface board, switch off the personal computer and its peripheral devices, and disconnect their power supply cables. Otherwise, there is a serious danger of electric shock.
(1) Remove the covering plate of ISA extension slot on the personal computer.
(2) Set the I/O base address of the interface board (in only case of ISA type).
Before mounting the interface board of ISA type, set the I/O address not to conflict with the I/O address areas that are used by the personal computer and other ISA extension boards. Set the I/O address not to conflict with each other in case that two or more interface boards for the personal computer are used (HSSB multi-connection).
The interface board of PCI type is setting free.
(3) Insert the interface board for the personal computer to the ISA connector tightly.
(4) Screw the plate of interface board to the computer.
(5)Confirm connection (in only case of HSSB multi-connection)

Confirm following items for installing drivers of HSSB interface board in case of HSSB multi-connection.

- In case of ISA type

I/O port address set to HSSB channel
Correspondence between HSSB channel and CNC

- In case of PCI type

PCI slot number which HSSB board is mounted (slot number is marked to PCB normally).
Correspondence between HSSB channel and CNC
(6) Restore the covering plate.

## NOTE

Do not touch the leads running to the card edge of the interface board (that match with connectors).


Fig. 11.6 I/O base address setting (for personal computer interface board of new type 2 (A20-B-8100-0582, -0583))

## 11.7 <br> HANDLING PRECAUTIONS

(1) Personal computer interface board
(A) Electrostatic interference

The personal computer interface board is shipped in an anti-static bag. To store or transport the interface board, always place it in the anti-static bag. Before removing the interface board from the anti-static bag, ground your body.
(B) Protection of card edge terminals

When handling the personal computer interface board, do NOT touch its card edge terminals (the gold-plated contacts which engage with a mating connector). If you accidentally touch any card edge terminal, wipe it gently with clean or ethyl alcohol-dipped tissue paper or absorbent cotton. Do not use any organic solvent other than ethyl alcohol.
(2) Optical connector and fiber cable See Appendix D.
11.8

RECOMMENDED CABLES


Compatible cables (optical fiber cables, used for interconnections) A66L-6001-0026\#L_

See descriptions about standard cable lengths in Appendix D for explanations about how to specify the length of the underscored portion and the related cautions.

## NOTE

An optical fiber cable of up to 100 m can be used only when the NC side interface board A02B-0281-J202 (printed circuit board drawing number: A20B-8001-0641) is used with the personal computer interface board (A20B-8001 -0582, -0583-960 or -0961).

12

## FANUC DNC2 INTERFACE

12.1 GENERAL

FANUC DNC2 is a communication protocol that provides an RS-232-C interface between the CNC and a personal computer (PC). This interface enables the CNC and PC to exchange data with each other. The hardware used to connect the CNC and PC is the same as that used for remote buffer connection.
For information about the specifications and other details of FANUC DNC2, refer to "FANUC DNC2 Description (B-61992E)."



Connect CS to RS when CS is not used.
Connect DR to ER when DR is not used.
Always connect CD to ER.

## NOTE

When an IBM PC/AT is used, the RS signal goes low in the reception phase. In this case, connect CS on the host side to ER on the same side.

## 13 CONNECTION TO OTHER NETWORKS

The Series $0 i-\mathrm{C}$ can be connected to the following networks. For an explanation of how to make the connection, refer to the manuals listed below:

| Manual title | Manual code |
| :--- | :--- |
| FANUC Data Server Operator's Manual | B-62694EN |
| FANUC Ethernet Board Operator's Manual | B-63354EN |
| FANUC Profibus-DP Board Operator's Manual | B-62924EN |
| FANUC DeviceNet Board Operator's Manual | B-63404EN |

## APPENDIX

A

## EXTERNAL DIMENSIONS OF EACH UNIT

| Name |  |  | Specification | Fig., No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CNC control unit (7.2"/8.4" LCD, MDI horizontal type) |  |  |  | Fig. U1 |
| CNC control unit (7.2"/8.4" LCD, MDI vertical type) |  |  |  | Fig. U2 |
| I/O unit for Oi |  |  | A02B-0309-C001 | Fig. U5 |
| HSSB interface board type 2 (1CH) on the personal computer side (ISA) |  |  | A20B-8001-0583 | Fig. U16(a) |
| HSSB interface board type 2 (2CH) on the personal computer side (ISA) |  |  | A20B-8001-0582 | Fig. U16(a) |
| HSSB interface board type $2(1 \mathrm{CH})$ on the personal computer side (PCI) |  |  | A20B-8001-0961 | b) |
| HSSB interface board type 2 (2CH) on the personal computer side (PCI) |  |  | A20B-8001-0960 | Fig. U16(b) |
| 人 position coder |  | $10000 \mathrm{~min}^{-1}$ | A860-0309-T302 | Fig. U17 |
| Manual pulse generator |  |  | A860-0203-T001 | Fig. U18 |
| Pendant type manual pulse generator |  |  | A860-0203-T004 | Fig. U19 |
|  |  |  | A860-0203-T005 |  |
|  |  |  | A860-0203-T007 |  |
|  |  |  | A860-0203-T010 |  |
|  |  |  | A860-0203-T012 |  |
|  |  |  | A860-0203-T013 |  |
| Separate detector interface unit |  |  | A02B-0236-C205, C204 | Fig. U20 |
| Battery case for separate detector interface unit (ABS) |  |  | A06B-6050-K060 | Fig. U21 |
| CNC battery unit for external installation |  |  | A02B-0236-C281 | Fig. U22 |
| Punch panel | Narrow width type | Cable length : 1 m | A02B-0120-C191 | Fig. U24 |
|  |  | Cable length : 2 m | A02B-0120-C192 |  |
|  |  | Cable length : 5m | A02B-0120-C193 |  |
| Machine operator's panel | Main panel B |  | A02B-0236-C231 | Fig. U25 |
|  | Sub panel A |  | A02B-0236-C232 | Fig. U26 |
|  | Sub panel B1 |  | A02B-0236-C235 | Fig. U27 |



Fig.U1 CNC control unit (7.2"/8.4" LCD, MDI horizontal type)

Mounting hole machining diagram
(The unit can be attached from the outside of the cabinet.)


Paint color: Munsell code N3, semi-gloss finish

Fig.U2 CNC control unit (7.2"/8.4" LCD, MDI vertical type)


Fig.U5 I/O unit for $0 i$
Specification No. : A02B-0309-C001


Fig.U16 (a) High-speed serial bus interface board type 2 (PC) (ISA bus version)
Specification No. : A20B-8001-0583 (1 CH) A20B-8001-0582 (2 CH)


Fig.U16 (b) Interface Board for Personal Computer (PCI bus version) Specification No. : A20B-8001-0960 (2 CH) A20B-8001-0961 (1 CH)


Fig.U17 $\alpha$ position coder
Specification No.: A860-0309-T302 (10000 min $^{-1}$ maximum)


Fig. U24 External dimensions of manual pulse generator Specification No.: A860-0203-T001
(1) A860-0203-T004 to T009


Fig.U19 Pendant type manual pulse generator
Specification No. : A860-0203-T004 to T015


The connector names in parentheses are for an expansion unit. The expansion unit does not have connectors CP11, JA4A, COP10A, and COP10B.

Fig.U20 External dimensions of separate detector interface unit


Fig.U21 External dimensions of ABS battery case for separate detector Specification No. : A06B-6050-K060


The battery unit is fitted with a $14-\mathrm{m}$ battery cable.
Fig. U22 External dimensions of external CNC battery unit


At the rear of the metal panel, the area within 8 mm of the outside edge is left unpainted.

Fig. U24 External dimensions of punch panel (narrow type)


Unit $=\mathrm{mm}$
Weight: 1.6 kg

Panel cut drawing

Fig.U25 Machine operator's panel (Main panel B)
Specification No. : A02B-0236-C231


Fig.U26 Machine operator's panel (Sub panel A)
Specification No. : A02B-0236-C232


Unit $=\mathrm{mm}$
Weight: 0.6 kg


Panel cut drawing

Fig.U27 Machine operator's panel (Sub panel B1) Specification No. : A02B-0236-C235

Connectors

| Fig. title | Specification No. | Fig. No. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PCR connector (soldering type) | PCR-E20FS | Fig.C1 (a) |
| FI40 connector | FI40-2015S | Fig.C1 (b) |
| Connector case (HONDA PCR type) | PCR-V20LA/PCR-V20LB | Fig.C2 (a) |
| Connector case (HIROSE FI type) | FI-20-CV | Fig.C2 (b) |
| Connector case (FUJITSU FCN type) | FCN-240C20-Y/S | Fig.C2 (c) |
| Connector case (HIROSE PCR type) | FI-20-CV7 | Fig.C2 (d) |
| AMP connector (1) for servo side | AMP1-178128-3 | Fig.C3 (a) |
| AMP connector (2) for servo side | AMP2-178128-3 | Fig.C3 (b) |
| AMP connector (3) for +24 V power supply | AMP1-178288-3 | Fig.C3 (c) |
| AMP connector (4) for +24 V power supply | AMP2-178288-3 | Fig.C3 (d) |
| Contact for AMP connector | AMP1-175218-2/5 <br> AMP1-175196-2/5 | Fig.C3 (e) |
| HONDA connector (case) |  | Fig.C4 (a) |
| HONDA connector (angled case) |  | Fig.C4 (b) |
| HONDA connector (male) |  | Fig.C4 (c) |
| HONDA connector (female) |  | Fig.C4 (d) |
| HONDA connector (terminal layout) |  | Fig.C4 (e) |
| Connector (FCI Japan)(3 pins/brown) | SMS3PN-5 | Fig.C5 |
| Connector for HIROSE flat cable | $\begin{aligned} & \text { HIF3BB-50D-2.54R } \\ & \text { HIT3BB-34D-2.54R } \end{aligned}$ | Fig.C6 |
| Connector (Japan Aviation Electronics)(for MDI) | LY10-DC20 | Fig.C7 (a) |
| Contact (Japan Aviation Electronics)(for MDI) | LY10-C2-3 | Fig.C7 (b) |
| Punch panel connector for reader/punch interface |  | Fig.C8 (a) |
| Locking plate for reader/punch interface connector |  | Fig.C8 (b) |
| Honda connector (for distribution I/O connection printed circuit board) | MRH-50FD | Fig. C9 |

TYPE : HONDA PCR-E20FS (SOLDERING TYPE)
USAGE : GENERAL
MATING
HOUSING : HONDA PCR-V20LA (PLASTIC)


|  | A | B |
| :--- | :---: | ---: |
| PCR-E20FS | 21.65 | 11.43 |

Fig. C1 (a) PCR connector (soldering type)


Fig. C1 (b) Fl40 connector

TYPE : HONDA PCR-V20LA (for 6 dia. cable)
USAGE : GENERAL



(4)
(1) (2) Case
(3) Cable clamp
(4) Lock bracket
(5) Lock lever
(6) Set screw for cable clamp

Fig. C2 (a) Connector case (HONDA PCR type)

```
TYPE : HIROSE FI-20-CV
USAGE : PULSE CODER INTERFACE
    LINEAR SCALE INTERFACE
    MANUAL PULSE GENERATOR INTERFACE
```



Fig. C2 (b) Connector case (HIROSE FI type)

## TYPE : FUJITSU FCN-240C20-Y/S (for 5.8 dia. cable) <br> USAGE : GENERAL



Fig. C2 (c) Connector case (FUJITSU FCN type)


Fig. C2 (d) Connector case (PCR type (Hirose Electric))


Fig. C3 (a) AMP connector (1)


Fig. C3 (b) AMP connector (2)

| TYPE | $:$ |
| :--- | :--- |
|  |  |
| USAGE | $:$ |
|  | POWP1-178288-3 <br>  <br>  <br>  <br> $\quad+24 \mathrm{~V}$ INPUT |



Fig. C3 (c) AMPconnector (3)

```
TYPE : AMP2-178288-3
USAGE : POWER CP1B
    +24V OUTPUT
```

| 3 |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 2 | 0 V |
| 1 | +24 V |

DIMENSION


Fig. C3 (d) AMP connector (4)


Fig. C3 (e) Contact for AMP connector


| Specification | Symbol | A | (B) | C | (D) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| MR-20LMH | (Plug) | 39.3 | 44.9 | 39.8 | 17 |
| MR-20LFH | (Jack) |  |  |  |  |
| MR-50LMH | (Plug) | 67.9 | 73.5 | 44.8 | 18 |


| Number of <br> terminals |
| :---: |
| 20 |
| 50 |


| Symbol | Name |
| :---: | :--- |
| 1 | Connector cover |
| 2 | Cable clamp |
| 3 | Stopper |
| 4 | Screw for cable clamp |
| 5 | Plug (MR-20, 50MH) |
|  | Jack (MR-20, 50FH) |

Outer diameter of the cable MR-20L dia. 10 mm max MR-50L dia. 16 mm max

Fig. C4 (a) HONDA connector (case)


Fig. C4 (b) Honda connector (angled-type case)


$\left.$|  | A | B |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| MR-20RMH | 32.8 | 27.8 |
| MR-50RHF | 61.4 | 56.4 | | Number of |
| :---: |
| terminals | \right\rvert\, | 50 |
| :---: | :---: |


| Symbol | Name |
| :---: | :--- |
| 1 | Cable clamp |
| 2 | Screw 2.6dia. $\times 8$ |
| 3 | Connector (MR-20,-50MH) |

Fig. C4 (c) HONDA connector (male)


|  | A | B |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| MR-20RMH | 32.8 | 27.8 |
| MR-50RMH | 61.4 | 56.4 |


| Symbol | Name |
| :---: | :--- |
| 1 | Cable clamp |
| 2 | Screw 2.6dia.×8 |
| 3 | Connector ( MR-20,-50FH) |

Fig. C4 (d) HONDA connector (female)


Fig. C4 (e) HONDA connector (terminal layout)


Manufacturer : FCI Japan

| Name |  | Specification <br> (Connector maker <br> number) | Remarks |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Connector housing for cable | SMS3PNS-5 | Brown |  |
|  | (Crimp type) | RC16M-23T3 | For details on tools <br> required for crimp <br> terminals,contact the <br> manufacturer. |
|  | (Solder type) | RC16M-SCT3 |  |

Cables: Cross sectional area : $0.75 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}(30 / 0.18)$
Insulation diameter : 2.8mm max
Peeling length : 7.2mm

Fig. C5 Connector made by FCI Japan (3 pins,black)

CONNECTOR FOR FLAT CABLE (HIROSE ELEC. CO.)
Specification HIROSE ELEC. CO.


Dimensions

| Description | No.of <br> contact | A | B | C | D |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| HIF3BB-34D-2.54R | 34 | 47.75 | 40.64 | 41.91 | 43.23 |
| HIF3BB-50D-2.54R | 50 | 68.07 | 60.96 | 62.23 | 63.6 |



Fig. C6 Connector for HIROSE Flat cable


Fig. C7 (a) Connector (Japan Aviation Electronics)(for MDI)


## Excluding the crimp terminal



Product name

Fig. C7 (b) Contact (Japan Aviation Electronics)(for MDI)


Fig. C8 (a) Punch panel connector for reader/puncher interface


Fig. C8 (b) Locking plate plate for reader/puncher interface connector

Honda MR type, 50 pins, male, connection printed circuit board soldering type connector
Type No. Honda Tsushin Kogyo Co., Ltd.
MRH-50FD


MRH-50FD

Pin configuration of Honda MR connector, 50 pins, male


Fig. C9 Honda connector

20-PIN INTERFACE CONNECTORS AND CABLES

## B. 1 OVERVIEW

## B. 2

BOARD-MOUNTED CONNECTORS

This section explains the recommended (FANUC-approved) connectors for the 20-pin interface, used with the following target models, and the corresponding cables.

Model : PCR-EV20MDT produced by Honda Tsushin or 52618-2011 produced by Japan Molex

The board-mounted connector has been specially developed to achieve the FANUC proprietary high packing density. However, the mating mechanism of the connector is compatible with that of Honda PCR series connectors. Therefore, Honda PCR series connectors can be used as cable connectors. Because cable connectors support this specification extensively, many connector manufacturers offer custom-tailored models.

## B. 3 <br> CABLE CONNECTORS

Cable connectors consist of a connector main body and housing. The models listed below are available. Those connectors not marked with an asterisk are currently being mass-produced as manufacturer's standard models. Those marked with an asterisk are produced according to custom specifications by FANUC.


Fig. B. 3 Cable connectors

## Cable Connectors

Strand wire press-mount connector:
With this connector, \#28AWG wires are press-connected to each pin at the same time. The cost of producing a cable/connector assembly with this connector model is much lower than with connectors designed for crimping or soldering.
Soldering type connector : Details of soldering type connectors and their housings are summarized below.

Table B. 3 Details of soldering type connectors and housings

## - Connectors

| Connector model (manufacturer) | Supplementary description |
| :--- | :--- |
| PCR-E20FS (Honda) | Soldering type connector for general signals. This is suitable for producing cable <br> assemblies in small quantities, as well as on-site. |
| FI40-20S (Hirose) | Equivalent to Honda PCR-E20FS |
| FI40B-20S (Hirose) <br> (formerly, FI40A-20S) | Has the same number of pins as the FI40-20S, but features a wider soldering pitch, <br> facilitating soldering and enabling the use of thicker wires. Its reinforced pins allow <br> wires as thick as \#17AWG to be soldered to the FI40B-20S (wires no thicker than <br> \#20AWG can be used with the FI40A-20S). Note, however, that a thick wire, such <br> as \#17AWG, should be used with a more robust housing like the FI-20-CV6. |
| FI40B-2015S (Hirose) <br> (formerly, FI40-2015S) | Features a wider soldering pitch, attained by using the space provided by thinning <br> out some pins. Also features tougher pins, compared with its predecessor, the <br> FI40-2015S. These pins can be soldered to wires as thick as \#17AWG, provided <br> that the cable diameter does not exceed 8.5 mm. |

## - Housings

| Housing model (manufacturer) | Supplementary description |
| :--- | :--- |
| FI-20-CV5 (Hirose) | Should be used with the FI40B-20S. This is a plastic housing designed for use <br> with a cable that is 9.2 mm in diameter. |
| FI-20-CV6 (Hirose) | Should be used with the FI40B-20S. This housing, however, can be used with a <br> thicker cable (such as 10.25 mm) than is possible with the FI-20-CV6. Its <br> components are die cast. |

In addition to the combinations shown in Fig. B.4, Hirose soldering-type connectors can be combined with the housings listed below. Ensure that the diameter of the cable used with each housing satisfies the requirements of that housing.


## B. 4

RECOMMENDED
CONNECTORS,
APPLICABLE
HOUSINGS, AND
CABLES
Table B. 4 Recommended connectors, applicable housings, and cables

| Connector name referenced in the Connection Manual | FANUC-approved connector (manufacturer) | FANUC-approved housing (manufacturer) | Compatible cable (cable diameter) <br> FANUC development <br> FANUC specification number | Remark |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PCR-E20FA <br> Strand press-mount type | PCR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin) | PCR-V20LA (Honda Tsushin) | A66L-0001-0284\#10P ( 6.2 mm in diameter) | Plastic housing |
|  | FI30-20S <br> (Hirose Electric) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FI-20-CV2 } \\ & \text { (Hirose Electric) } \end{aligned}$ |  | Plastic housing |
|  | FCN-247J020-G/E <br> (Fujitsu Takamizawa) | FCN-240C020-Y/S <br> (Fujitsu Takamizawa) |  | Plastic housing |
|  | $\begin{array}{\|l} \text { 52622-2011 } \\ \text { (Molex) } \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 52624-2015 } \\ & \text { (Molex) } \end{aligned}$ |  | Plastic housing |
| PCR-E20FS Soldering type | PCR-E20FS <br> (Honda Tsushin) | PCR-V20LA <br> (Honda Tsushin) |  | Plastic housing |
|  |  | PCS-E20LA <br> (Honda Tsushin) |  | Metal housing |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FI40-20S } \\ & \text { (Hirose Electric) } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FI-20-CV2 } \\ & \text { (Hirose Electric) } \end{aligned}$ |  | Plastic housing |
| FI40B-2015S (formerly FI40-2015S) 15-pin soldering type | FI40B-2015S (formerly FI40-2015S) (Hirose Electric) | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FI-20-CV5 } \\ & \text { (Hirose Electric) } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l} \text { A66L-0001-0367 } \\ \text { A66L-0001-0368 } \\ \text { (9.2 mm in diameter) } \end{array}$ | Plastic housing |

## NOTE

*1 Cable A66L-0001-0286 has been recommended for use as a pulse coder cable. It can be up to 20 m long. Two cables, A66L-0001-0402 and A66L-0001-0403, have recently been developed. A66L-0001-0402 and A66L-0001-0403 can be as long as 30 m and 50 m , respectively. (See Fig. 4 for detailed specifications.)
Both cables have the same level of oil and bending resistance (cable, 100 mm in diameter, capable of withstanding at least 10 million bending cycles) as conventional cables, and are UL- and CSA-certified.

## Press-mount type connector assembly tools and jigs

| Connector model referenced in the Connection Manual | FANUC-approved connector (manufacturer) | Wire forming tool | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Press-mounting } \\ & \text { tool } \end{aligned}$ | Remark |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| PCR-E20FA | PCR-E20FA (Honda Tsushin) | PCS-K2A | FHPT-918A | Low cost |
|  |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { JGPS-015-1/1-20 } \\ & \text { JGPS-014 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \text { MFC-K1 } \\ \text { PCS-K1 } \end{array}$ | (Note 1) |
|  |  | FHAT-918A |  |  |
|  | FI30-20S (Hirose Electric) | FI30-20CAT | FI30-20/ID | Low cost |
|  |  | FI30-20CAT1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { HHP-502 } \\ & \text { FI30-20GP } \end{aligned}$ |  |
|  | FCN-247J020-G/S <br> (Fujitsu) | FCN-237T-T043/H | $\begin{aligned} & \text { FCN-237T-T109/H } \\ & \text { FCN-247T-T066/H } \end{aligned}$ |  |
|  |  | FCN-237T-T044/H |  |  |
|  |  | FCN-237T-T062/H |  |  |
|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { 52622-2011 } \\ & \text { (Molex) } \end{aligned}$ | 57829-5000 | 57830-5000 | Low cost |
|  |  | 57823-5000 | 57824-5000 |  |

## NOTE

1 Those tools indicated by shading are available from FANUC (specification number A02B-0120-K391).
2 The tools available from each manufacturer are specifically designed for use with the connectors manufactured by that manufacturer.

## Materials for cable assemblies

Machine tool builders are required to manufacture or procure the materials for the cable assemblies to be used with their products. FANUC recommends the following materials as being suitable for interface connectors. Individual machine tool builders are encouraged to contact each cable manufacturer for themselves, as required.

| Material | Use | Constitution | FANUC specification number | Manufacturer | Remark |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 10-pair cable | General use | $\begin{aligned} & \begin{array}{l} 0.08 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ 10 \text {-pair } \end{array} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A66L-0001-0284 } \\ & \text { \#10P } \end{aligned}$ | Hitachi Cable, Ltd. Oki Electric Cable Co., Ltd. SHINKO ELECTRIC INDUSTRIES CO., LTD |  |
| 5-conductor coaxial cable | CRT/LCD interface (long-distance) | 5-conductor coaxial | A66L-0001-0371 | Hitachi Cable, Ltd. | 50 m or less |
| 12-conductor composite cable | Pulse coder, linear scale, manual pulse generator | $\begin{aligned} & \hline 0.5 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ & \text { 6-conductor } \\ & 0.18 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ & \text { 3-pair } \end{aligned}$ | A66L-0001-0286 | Hitachi Cable, Ltd. Oki Electric Cable Co., Ltd. SHINKO ELECTRIC INDUSTRIES CO., LTD. | 20 m or less |
|  |  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 0.75 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ 6 \text {-conductor } \\ 0.18 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ \text { 3-pair } \end{array}$ | A66L-0001-0402 | Oki Electric Cable Co., Ltd. | 30 m or less Usable on movable parts |
|  |  | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline 1.25 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ \text { 6-conductor } \\ 0.18 \mathrm{~mm}^{2} \\ \text { 3-pair } \end{array}$ | A66L-0001-0403 | Oki Electric Cable Co., Ltd. | 50 m or less Usable on movable parts |

10-pair cable

| Item |  | Unit | Specifications |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Product No. |  | - | A66L-0001-0284\#10P |
| Manufacturer |  |  | Hitachi Cable,Ltd. <br> Oki Electric Cable, Co.,Ltd. <br> SHINKO ELECTRIC INDUSTRIES CO., LTD. |
| Rating |  | - | $60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 30V:UL2789 <br> $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ 30V:UL80276 |
| Material | Conductor | - | Stranded wire of tinned annealed copper (ASTM B-286) |
|  | Insulator | - | Cross-linked vinyl |
|  | Shield braid | - | Tinned annealed copper wire |
|  | Sheath | - | Heat-resistant oilproof vinyl |
| Number of pairs |  | Pairs | 10 |
| Conductor | Size | AWG | 28 |
|  | Structure | Conductors /mm | 7/0.127 |
|  | Outside diameter | mm | 0.38 |
| Insulator | Thickness | mm | $\begin{gathered} 0.1 \\ \text { Thinnest portion : } 0.08(3.1 \mathrm{~mm}) \end{gathered}$ |
|  | Outside diameter (approx.) | mm | 0.58 |
|  | Core style (rating) | mm | UL15157(80 ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 30 \mathrm{~V}$ ) |
| Twisted pair | Outside diameter (approx.) | mm | 1.16 |
|  | Pitch | mm | 20 or less |
| Lay |  | - | Collect the required number of twisted pairs into a cable, then wrap binding tape around the cable. To make the cable round, apply a cable separator as required. |
| Lay diameter (approx.) |  | mm | 3.5 |
| Drain wire |  | Conductors /mm | Hitachi Cable : Not available Shinko Electric : Not available Oki Electric Cable : Available,10/0.12 |
| Shield braid | Element wire diameter | mm | 0.12 |
|  | Braid density | \% | 85 or more |
| Sheath | Color | - | Black |
|  | Thickness | mm | 1.0 |
|  | Outside diameter (approx.) | mm | 6.2 |
| Standard length |  | m | 200 |
| Packing method |  | - | Bundle |
| Electrical performance | Electric resistance (at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) | $\Omega / \mathrm{km}$ | 233 or less |
|  | Insulation resistance (at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) | M ,-km | 10 or more |
|  | Dielectricstrength (AC) | V/min. | 300 |
| Flame resistance |  | - | Shall pass flame resistance test VW-1SC of UL standards. |

(b) Cable structure


The numbers assigned to the wires correspond to the numbers in the table at right.

Fig. B. 4

Composite 12-core cable

| Item |  | Unit | Specifications |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Product No. |  | - | A66L-0001-0286 |  |
| Manufacturer |  | - | Oki Cable, Ltd. <br> Hitachi Electric Cable Co., Ltd. <br> SHINKO ELECTRIC INDUSTRIES CO., LTD. |  |
| Rating |  | - | $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, 30 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |
| Material | Conductor,braid-shielded wire,drain wire | - | Strand wire of tinned annealed copper (JIS C3152) |  |
|  | Insulator | - | Heat-resistant flame-retardant vinyl |  |
|  | Sheath | - | Oilproof, heat-resistant, flame-retardant vinyl |  |
| Number of wires (wire ons.) |  | Cores | 6 (1 to 6) | 6 (three pairs) (7 to 9) |
| Conductor | Size | $\mathrm{mm}^{2}$ | 0.5 | 0.18 |
|  | Structure | Conductors /mm | 20/0.18 | 7/0.18 |
|  | Outside diameter | mm | 0.94 | 0.54 |
| Insulator | Standard thickness (The minimum thickness is at least $80 \%$ of the standard thickness.) | mm | 0.25 | 0.2 |
|  | Outside diameter | mm | 1.50 | 0.94 |
| Twisted pair | Outside diameter | mm |  | 1.88 |
|  | Direction of lay | - |  | Left |
|  | Pitch | mm |  | 20 or less |
| Lay |  | - | Twist the wires at an appropriate pitch so the outermost layer is right-twisted, and wrap tape around the outermost layer. Apply a cable separator as required. |  |
| Lay diameter |  | mm | 5.7 |  |
| Drain wire | Size | mm ${ }^{2}$ | 0.3 |  |
|  | Structure | Wires/mm | 12/0.18 |  |
|  | Outside diameter | mm | 0.72 |  |
| Shield braid | Element wire diameter | mm | 0.12 |  |
|  | Thickness | mm | 0.3 |  |
|  | Braid density | \% | 70 |  |
|  | Outside diameter | mm | 6.3 |  |


| Item |  | Unit | Specifications |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Sheath | Color | - | Black |  |
|  | Standard thickness (The minimum thickness is at least $85 \%$ of the standard thickness.) | mm | 1.1 |  |
|  | Outside diameter | mm | 8.5Max. 9.0(1) |  |
| Standard length |  | m | 100 |  |
| Packing method |  | - | Bundle |  |
| Electrical performance | Electric resistance (at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) (wire nos.) | $\Omega / \mathrm{km}$ | 39.4(1 to 6) | 113(7 to 9) |
|  | Insulation resistance (at $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) | $\mathrm{M} \Omega-\mathrm{km}$ | 15 |  |
|  | Dielectric strength (AC) | V/min. | 500 |  |
| Flame resistance |  | - | Shall pass flame resistance test VW-1SC of UL standards, |  |

## NOTE

The maximum outside diameter applies to portions other than the drain wire.
(b) Cable structure

The cable structure is shown below.

(c) Specifications

| Item <br> FANUC specification number |  | Specification |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | A66L-0001-0402 |  | A66L-0001-0403 |  |
| Manufacturer |  | Oki Electric Cable Co., Ltd. |  |  |  |
|  |  | A-conductor | B-conductor | A-conductor | B-conductor |
| Conductor | Constitution Number of conductors/mm | $\begin{gathered} 16 / 0.12 \\ \left(0.18 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}\right) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 3 / 22 / 0.12 \\ \left(0.75 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}\right) \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} 16 / 0.12 \\ \left(0.18 \mathrm{~mm}^{2}\right) \end{gathered}$ | 7/16/0.12 <br> (1.25mm ${ }^{2}$ ) |
|  | Typical outside diameter (mm) | 0.55 | 1.20 | 0.55 | 1.70 |
| Insulation (polyester) | Color | White, red, black | Red, black | White, red, black | Red, black |
|  | Typical thickness (mm) | 0.16 | 0.23 | 0.16 | 0.25 |
|  | Typical outside diameter (mm) | 0.87 | 1.66 | 0.87 | 2.20 |
| Pair twisting | Constitution | White-red, white-black, and black-red |  | White-red, white-black, and black-red |  |
|  | Direction of twisting | Left <br> Typical pitch: <br> 20 mm |  | Left <br> Typical pitch: 20 mm |  |
| Assembling by twisting | Number of strands or conductors | 3 | 6 | 3 | 6 |
|  | Direction of twisting | Left |  | Left |  |
|  | Taping | Twisting is wrapped with washi, or Japanese paper, tape. |  | Twisting is wrapped with washi, or Japanese paper, tape. |  |
|  | Typical outside diameter (mm) | 5.7 |  | 6.9 |  |
| Braided shielding | Typical strand diameter (mm) | 0.14 |  |  |  |
|  | Typical density (mm) | 80 |  |  |  |
|  | Drain | A $12 / 0.18 \mathrm{~mm}$ wire is roughly wrapped under braided shielding. |  |  |  |
|  | Typical outside diameter (mm) | 6.4 |  | 7.6 |  |
| Sheath (polyurethane) | Color | Black (matted) |  |  |  |
|  | Typical thickness (mm) | 1.05 |  | 1.1 |  |
|  | Vertical taping | Vertically taped with washi under sheathing. |  |  |  |
|  | Outside diameter (mm) | $8.5 \pm 0.3$ |  | $9.8 \pm 0.3$ |  |
| Finished assembly | Typical length (m) | 100 |  |  |  |
|  | Short size | Basically not approved. |  |  |  |



5-core coaxial cable

| Item |  | Unit | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Specification |  | - | A66L-0001-0371 |
| Manufacture |  | - | Hitachi Densen |
| Number of Conductors |  | - | 5 |
| Inside Conductor | Size | mm ${ }^{2}$ | 0.14 |
|  | Components | Conductors(PCS)/mm | 7/0.16 |
|  | Material | - | Tin-coated Soft Copper Wire |
|  | Diamter | mm | 0.48 |
| Insulator | Material (Color) | - | Polyethylene (White) Heat-resistant $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
|  | Thickness | mm | 0.71 |
|  | Diamter | mm | 1.90 |
| Outside Conductor | Material | - | Tin-coated Soft Copper Wire (Rolled) |
|  | Diamter of Component-Wire | mm | 0.08 |
|  | Density | \% | 95 or more |
|  | Thickness | mm | 0.2 |
| Jacket | Material | - | Vinyl Heart-resistant $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
|  | Color | - | Black, White, Red, Green, Blue |
|  | Thickness | mm | 0.15 |
|  | Diamter | mm | 2.6 |
| Twisted Assembly Diameter |  | mm | 7.1 |
| Thickness of Paper Tape |  | mm | 0.05 |
| Shield braiding | Element wire diameter (material) | mm | 0.12 (tinned soft copper wire) |
|  | Density | \% | 80 or more (typ. 82\%) |
|  | Thickness | mm | 0.3 |
|  | Diameter | mm | 7.8 |
| Sheath | Material, Color | - | Oil Tight Vinyl (A) Black Heat-resistant $80^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
|  | Thickness | mm | 0.7 (Min. : 0.56) |
| Finish Diameter |  | mm | $9.2 \pm 0.3$ |
| Conductor Resistance ( $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) |  | $\Omega / \mathrm{km}$ | 143 or less |
| Withstand Voltage (A.C.) |  | - | 1000VAC |
| Insulation Resistance ( $20^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ ) |  | $\mathrm{M} \Omega-\mathrm{km}$ | 1000 or more |


| Item | Unit | Description |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Impedanse $(10 \mathrm{MHz})$ | $\Omega$ | $75 \pm 5$ |
| Standard Capacitance $(1 \mathrm{MHz})$ | $\mathrm{nF} / \mathrm{km}$ | 56 |
| Standard Attenation $(10 \mathrm{MHz})$ | $\mathrm{dB} / \mathrm{km}$ | 53 |
| Estimated weight | $\mathrm{kg} / \mathrm{km}$ | 105 |
| Standard Length | m | 200 |
| Package form | - | Bundle |



An example of circuit testing 20-pin interface cable


## CONNECTION CABLE (SUPPLIED FROM US)

Maximum allowable cable length between units

| Cable type | Use and condition | Maximum <br> cable length <br> (m) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| MDI cable | Control unit-to-MDI unit | 0.5 m |
|  | Electrical cable | 10 m Note 2 |
|  | Electrical-to-optical conversion <br> adapter | 2 m |
|  | Optical cable | 200 m |
| Serial spindle cable | Electrical cable <br> (control unit-to-spindle servo unit) | 20 m |
|  | Electrical-to-optical conversion <br> adapter | 2 m |
|  | Optical cable | 200 m |
| Position coder cable | Control unit position coder | 50 m |
| MPG cable | For manual pulse generator | 50 m |
| FSSB cable | See APPENDIX D. |  |
| HSSB cable | See APPENDIX D. | 100 m |
| RS-232C <br> communication cable | 4800 baud or less | 9600 baud or less |
|  | RS-422 |  |
| communication cable | 9600 baud or less | 800 m |
|  | 19.2 kbaud | 50 m |

## NOTE

1 The maximum cable lengths listed above apply only when the respective recommended cables stated in the text are used. If a non-recommended cable is used, the maximum cable length may not be guaranteed. Cables other than those listed above are used between units in the CNC. See the respective descriptions in this manual for details of these cables.
2 This cable can be extended to up to 15 m if it is used within the cabinet.

| Purpose | Description | Specification | Length |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Spindle signal cable <br> Electrical-to-electr ical | PCR-E20FA | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & 0236- \\ & \text { K845 } \end{aligned}$ | 5 m |
| Spindle signal cable <br> When an electrical -to-optical conversion adapter is used | PCR-E20FA | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & 0236- \\ & \text { K847 } \end{aligned}$ | 1 m |
| Power supply cable for I/O unit-A <br> Control unit (CP1B) ॥ <br> I/O Unit-A <br> (CP31) | AMP2-178288-3 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & 0236- \\ & \text { K843 } \end{aligned}$ | 5 m |
| MDI signal cable Control unit ॥ MDI unit (CK1) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & \text { 0236- } \\ & \text { K812 } \end{aligned}$ | 25 m 45 m |
| Power supply cable for stand-alone type LCD unit stand-alone type MDI (CPD2) § <br> Stand-alone type LCD (CP5) | AMP2-178288-3 | A02B-0166K880 | 55 m |
| Manual pulse generator cable (for one unit) <br> Control unit (JA3) § <br> Manual pulse generator terminal board |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & 0120- \\ & \text { K847 } \end{aligned}$ | 7 m |


| Purpose | Description | Specification | Length |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Manual pulse generator cable (for two units) <br> Control unit (JA3) § <br> Manual pulse generator terminal board |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & 0120- \\ & \text { K848 } \end{aligned}$ | 7 m |
| Manual pulse generator cable (for three units) <br> Control unit (JA3) $\uparrow$ <br> Manual pulse generator terminal board |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & 0120- \\ & \text { K841 } \end{aligned}$ | 7 m |
| I/O Link cable <br> Control unit (JD1A) § <br> I/O unit (JD1B) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & 0120- \\ & \text { K842 } \end{aligned}$ | 5 m |
| Control unit power supply cable <br> Stabilized power supply (24 VDC) § <br> Control unit (CP1A) |  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { A02B- } \\ & 0124- \\ & \text { K830 } \end{aligned}$ | 5 m |

OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

The Series 0i/0i Mate uses optical fiber cables for the following interfaces. This table lists the usable combinations.

| Interface | Recommended <br> optical cable | Maximum allowable <br> transmission distance | Applicable junc- <br> tion adapter | Remark |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Serial spindle interface | A66L-6001-0026\#L~ | 100 m | None | A63L-0020-0004 |
| Serial spindle interface | A66L-6001-0029\#L~ | 55 m | A63L-0020-0002 |  |
| I/O Link interface | A66L-6001-0026\#L~ | 200 m | None |  |
| High-speed serial bus <br> (HSSB) interface (Note) | A66L-6001-0026\#L~ | 100 m | A63L-0020-0004 | For junction only |
|  | A66L-6001-0029\#L~ | 55 m | None |  |
| Serial servo bus (FSSB) <br> interface | A66L-6001-0023\#L~ | 10 m | None |  |
|  | A66L-6001-0026\#L~ | 100 m |  |  |

## NOTE

For printed-circuit boards with the following former ordering information, the maximum allowable transmission distance with $-0026 \# \mathrm{~L} \sim$ is lowered to 50 m , and connection with A63L-0020-0004 is impossible.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\cdot \text { A20B-8001-0580 } & \cdot \text { A20B-8001-0581 } \\
\cdot \text { A20B-8001-0640 } & \cdot \text { A20B-8100-0100 }
\end{array}
$$

## Notes on the specifications of optical fiber cable C

(1) Supported optical fiber cables
(a) Internal cord type cable: A66L-6001-0023\#L $\square R \square \square \square$

Cable length: 0.15 to 10 m
Code diameter: $2.2 \mathrm{~mm} \times 2$ cords
Tensile strength:
Optical fiber cord 7 kg per cord
Between optical fiber cord and connector 2 kg
Minimum bending radius of optical fiber cord: 25 mm
Operating temperature: -20 to $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$


Fig. D (a) External dimensions of internal cord type cable
(b) External type cable: A66L-6001-0026\#L $\square \mathrm{R} \square \square \square$

$$
\text { A66L-6001-0029\#L } \square \mathrm{R} \square \square \square
$$

Cable length: 1 to 200 m
Optical fiber cord diameter: $2.2 \mathrm{~mm} \times 2$ cords
Diameter of cable with reinforced cover: 7.6 mm
Tensile strength: Cable with reinforced cover: 75 kg Optical fiber cord 7 kg per cord
Between optical fiber cord and connector 2 kg
Minimum bending radius of optical fiber cord: 25 mm
Minimum bending radius of cable with reinforced cover: 50 mm
Bending resistance (cable with reinforced cover): 10 million bending cycles at room temperature (when the bending radius is 100 mm )

Flame resistance: Equivalent to UL VW-1
Operating temperature: -20 to $70^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$


Fig. D (b) External dimensions of external cable

Table D (a) Standard cable length

| Internal cord type cable |  | External cable |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| A66L-6001-0023\# |  | A66L-6001-0026\# |  |
| Specification | Length | Specification | Length |
| L150R0 | 0.15 m | L1R003 | 1.0 m |
| L300R0 | 0.3 m | L2R003 | 2.0 m |
| L500R0 | 0.5 m | L3R003 | 3.0 m |
| L1R003 | 1.0 m | L5R003 | 5.0 m |
| L2R003 | 2.0 m | L7R003 | 7.0 m |
| L3R003 | 5.0 m | L10R03 | L15R03 |
| L5R003 | 7.0 m | L20R03 | 10.0 m |
| L7R003 | 10.0 m | L30R03 | 20.0 m |
| L10R03 |  | L50R03 | 30.0 m |
|  |  | L100R03 | 50.0 m |
|  |  | L200R03 | 200.0 m |

2. Cable selection

- Always use an external cable (A66L-6001-0026\#~) when the cable is to be laid outside the power magnetics cabinet or main unit cabinet, where it may be pulled, rubbed, or stepped on.
- Use an external cable when part of the cabling is to be subject to movement. For example, when connecting a portable operation pendant box to the power magnetics cabinet, the use of an external cable is desirable because the cable is likely to be bent, pulled, or twisted repeatedly even though frequent system operation is not expected. However, the force likely to be applied when the cable is installed or moved for maintenance purposes does not need to be taken into consideration.
- Use an external cable in locations where sparks or flame are a danger. Although the internal cord type cable (A66L-6001-0023\#~) is covered by nonflammable resin, the cover, if exposed to frame for a long time, may melt, allowing the fiber cable inside to burn.
- Use an external cable when the cable is expected to be pulled with considerable force during installation (the force applied to the cable must be within the specified tensile strength limit at all times). For example, even though installing a cable in a cable duct can be regarded as internal cabling, a cable of the appropriate type must be selected according to the tensile force to be applied to the cable during installation.
- Both the internal cord type and external cables have the same oil and heat resistance properties.

3. Procuring the cable

All the optical fiber cables mentioned above are special cable products with optical connectors, which are designed, produced, and tested to ensure the required system performance and reliability. It is technically impossible for users to produce these cables or process (cut and reconnect) them after purchase. Users are requested to purchase cables of the necessary length from an appropriate supplier. Cables are available from either FANUC or any of the FANUC-approved manufacturers listed in Table D (b).
Table D (b) FANUC-approved cable manufacturers and cable model numbers (retail)
(1) Internal cord type cable A66L-6001-0023\#L $\square \mathrm{R} \square \square \square$

| Manufacturer | Model number | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Japan AMP, Co., Ltd. | $*-353373-*$ |  |
| Japan Aviation Electronics <br> Industry, Ltd. | PF-2HB209-**M-F-1 | $* *$ indicates the <br> cable length (m). |
| Hirose Electric Co., Ltd. | H07-P22-F2VCFA-** | $* *$ indicates the <br> cable length (m). |

(2) External Cable A66L-6001-0026\#L $\square \mathrm{R} \square \square \square$

| Manufacturer | Model number | Remarks |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Japan AMP, Co., Ltd. | $*-353199-*$ |  |
| Japan Aviation Electronics <br> Industry, Ltd. | CF-2HB208-**M-F-1 | $* *$ indicates the <br> cable length (m). |
| Hirose Electric Co., Ltd. | H07-P22-F2NCFA-** | $* *$ indicates the <br> cable length (m). |
| Oki Electric Cable Co., Ltd. | OPC201HPXF-**MB | $* *$ indicates the <br> cable length (m). |

## 4. Handling precautions

(1) Protection during storage

When the electrical/optical conversion module mounted on the printed circuit board and the optical fiber cable are not in use, their mating surfaces must be protected with the lid and caps with which they are supplied. If left uncovered, the mating surfaces are likely to become dirty, possibly resulting in a poor cable connection.


Fig. D (c) Protection of electrical/optical conversion module and optical fiber cable (when not in use)
(2) Optical fiber cable

- Make sure that the bending radius and tensile strength of the cable are always within their ranges described in the specifications (see the first item), regardless of whether the cable is stored or routed and whether operation is in progress or not.
- Although the reinforcing cover of the external cable has sufficient mechanical strength, be careful not to drop heavy objects on the cable.
- Grasp the optical connector firmly when connecting or disconnecting the cable. Do not pull on the optical fiber cord itself. (The maximum tensile strength between the fiber cord and connector is 2 kg . Applying greater force to the cord is likely to cause the connector to come off, making the cable unusable.)
- Once connected, the optical connector is automatically locked by the lock levers on its top. To remove the connector, release the lock levers and pull the connector.
- Although optical connectors cannot be connected in other than the correct orientation, always take note of the connector's orientation before making the connection.
- Before installing an external cable, fix either a wire with a hook or a tension member to the reinforcing cover of the optical connector and pull the wire or tension member, as shown in Fig. D (d). This is done to prevent a tensile force from being applied between the fiber cord and connector. If no tensile force is applied between the fiber cord and connector when installing the cable, you can hold the reinforcing cover of the connector directly and pull it. In the case of an internal cord, which does not have a reinforcing cover, apply the same protective measures, as instructed in Fig. D (d), for that portion of the cable where the two cords are bound together, in order to prevent a tensile force from being applied between the fiber cord and connector. In the same way as for an external cable, if no tensile force is applied between the fiber cord and connector during installation, you can hold the shielded part of the cable directly and
pull it. Because the combined tensile strength of the two cords is only 14 kg , however, avoid applying too great a force to the cable during installation, regardless of whether you have taken the protective measures.


Fig. D (d) Prior to installing a cable

- Take care to keep both parts of the optical connector (cable side and PCB side) clean. If they become dirty, wipe them with tissue paper or absorbent cotton to remove dirt. The tissue paper or absorbent cotton may be moistened with ethyl alcohol. Do not use any organic solvent other than ethyl alcohol.
- Fix the reinforcing cover of the external cable or the cord binding portion of the internal cord type cable by using a cable clamp, as shown in Fig. D (e), to prevent the weight of the optical fiber cable from being applied directly to the connecting part of the optical connector.


## (Recommended cable clamp):

Recommended cable clamps are listed below. Use a clamp that grasps the optical cable lightly; the clamp should not apply excessive pressure to the cable.
For an external cable:
CKN-13SP (with sponge)(Kitagawa Industry Co., Ltd.)
For an internal cord type cable:
MN-1 (Kitagawa Industry Co., Ltd.)


Fig. D (e) Fixing the cable with a clamp

- Any superfluous portion of the cable may be wound into a loops. Should this prove necessary, make sure the diameter of each loop is at least 150 mm (for an external cable) or at least 100 mm (for an internal cord type cable). Winding the cable into smaller loops may produce sharp curves that exceed the specified bending radius limit without the user being aware. Such bending can result in a greater transmission loss, ultimately leading to a communication failure.
- When using a nylon band (cable tie) as a cable clamp, follow the instructions given below. Also, take care not to apply a bending force to one particular part of the cable when fixing it with a clamp. Failing to clamp the cable correctly may cut or damage it.


## External cable:

Do not clamp the uncovered portion of the cable with a nylon band. When clamping the cable by the reinforcing cover, the clamping force is not an important factor to consider. However, ensure that the clamping force is as small as possible to ensure that the reinforcing cover is not deformed by the clamping. If possible, the clamping force should be 5 kg or less.
Internal cord type cable:
Lightly clamp the optical cable with a nylon band so that the cable shield is not deformed. If possible, the clamping force should be 1 or 2 kg (make sure that no force is applied to the cable). Due care is required when clamping the internal cord type cable because its cable shield is weaker than the reinforcing cover of the external cable.
5. Optical fiber cable relay

When used for the FANUC I/O Link application, optical fiber cables can be connected by using an optical fiber adapter, as follows.
(a) External view of an optical fiber adapter

(b) Example of the use of an optical fiber adapter


## NOTE

Up to one relay points are permitte.
6. Optical fiber cable relay of FANUC high-speed serial bus With the FANUC high-speed serial bus, special low-loss optical cables can be connected by using a special low-loss optical relay adapter as an optical fiber relay adapter.
(a) External view of the low-loss optical relay adapter

(b) Example of use of the optical fiber relay adapter


## NOTE

Only one relay point is permitted.
7. Precautions for connection with low-loss optical junction adapter

- Features of and handling precautions for low-loss optical junction adapter (A63L-0020-0004)
When optical connectors for a conventional optical junction adapter (A63L-0020-0002) are jointed, the facing ferrules(Note 1) are located about 60 um from each other. This is because the optical fiber of conventional PCF (plastic clad silica fiber) cables (A66L-6001-0008, $-0009,-0026$ ) may protrude from the tip of the ferrules (by up to about several um), resulting in the fiber protrusion being damaged when the ferrules are butted against each other.
In the low-loss optical junction adapter, the ferrules are butted against each other, thus greatly reducing the reduction in repeater loss. Therefore, the two optical cables used with the low-loss optical junction adapters must be dedicated to the adapters.
If a conventional PCF (plastic clad silica fiber) cable (A66L-6001-0008, -0009, -0026) is used as even one of the two optical fiber cables for joining the low-loss optical junction adapter, both cables may be damaged, resulting in deteriorated characteristics.


## NOTE

Ferrule: Movable metal at the tip of an optical connector; the fiber is bonded to the ferrule.


- Features of low-loss optical cable (A66L-6001-0029~)

A low-loss optical cable is selected from conventional PCF optical cables (A66L-6601-0026). The selected cable offers low loss, and its connector section is given special treatment; the fiber ends are provided with a depression so that the ferrules can be butted against each other. The two optical cables used with the low-loss optical junction adapter must be of low-loss type.

- Appearance of the low-loss optical junction adapter and cable (how to distinguish them from conventional types)
The body of the conventional optical junction adapter is black, but that of the low-loss optical junction adapter is blue. In addition, the protective cover(Note 1) of the conventional PCF optical cable is black, but that of the low-loss optical cable is blue.

8. Installing the optical fiber junction adapter

The optical fiber junction adapter should be installed within a cabinet, as a rule. If it is impossible to avoid installing it within a cabinet, protect the adapter and the optical cable portions (such as connectors and cords) not covered with reinforcement coating from the outside air by, for example, covering them with packing.
9. Environmental resistance of the optical fiber junction adapter

- The optical fiber junction adapter is not waterproof. Even when optical cables are attached to both ends of the adapter, there are very small gaps in the linked portions, so water resistance can not be expected.
- When optical cables are attached to both ends of the junction adapter installed in a normal environment (such as within a cabinet), it is unlikely that dust will penetrate between the adapter and optical fiber to the degree that it may hamper normal optical linkage. If one or both ends of the adapter are left open, dust and dirt may accumulate even when the adapter is in a normal environment (such as within a cabinet). The dust and dirt on the adapter ends is likely to hamper normal optical linkage when the optical cables are attached. In such a case, clean the junction adapter and the optical connector using the optical fiber junction adapter cleaning method described below.
- Do not allow cutting fluid to splash over the adapter or those optical cable portions (such as connectors and cords) that are not covered with reinforcement coating. If the inside of the adapter and fiber end surfaces are contaminated with cutting fluid, a malfunction may occur.


## 10.Cleaning

If the optical fiber junction adapter, optical-to-electrical conversion module, or optical cable are soiled, clean them according to the following procedures.

- Cleaning the optical fiber junction adapter and optical-to-electrical conversion module
First, clean the entire housing by wiping it with a cloth moistened with, or by washing it in, ethyl alcohol or HCFC141B (alternative CFC; High Shower spray can DS-2168, manufactured by Sun Hayato). Similarly, wash the two sleeves in the adapter or wipe them with a cotton swab or the like.
- Cleaning optical cables

For the optical cables, it is important to clean the connectors at their ends. Any soiling on the optical fiber end surfaces will hamper optical transmission, resulting in a malfunction. Wipe the optical fiber end surfaces (that is, the ferrule end surfaces) thoroughly with a soft, clean cloth (like gauze) moistened with ethyl alcohol or HCFC141B, in the same way as described above. The use of cotton swabs may prove convenient. The fiber end surfaces of low-loss optical cables are lower than the ferrules. To remove any soiling from the fiber end surfaces completely, push the cotton swab or gauze into the depressions all the way through while rotating the ferrule. If the ferrules and optical connectors are contaminated with oily substances, and they may extend over a cleaned fiber end surface when it is attached to the optical-to-electrical conversion module, it is a good idea to wash them before wiping the optical fiber end surfaces, using the procedure stated above.

LIQUID CRYSTAL DISPLAY (LCD)

Brightness of the monochrome LCD

When the ambient temperature is low, the brightness of the LCD decreases. (The LCD screen is dark particularly immediately after the power is turned on.) This phenomenon is not a failure but is a property specific to the LCD. When the ambient temperature increases, the LCD screen becomes brighter. The monochrome LCD has a brightness control function. For the method of adjustment, see Section 1.17.


## MEMORY CARD INTERFACE

Overview

## ATA CARD

Data I/O internal to the CNC can be performed for maintenance through the memory card interface in the control unit. This appendix F describes the memory card interface for data input/output.

1. Overview

The flash ATA card incorporates a storage device and controller, it enables data input/output for a personal computer equipped with a PCMCIA interface without using any special PC card writer.
2. Flash ATA card specification

The Flash ATA card must comply with the following standards and must be of one of the following types. However, it is not guaranteed that all ATA cards that comply with these standards will operate normally in the CNC. See Table F for those ATA cards whose normal operation has been confirmed by FANUC.

## 2-1 Card standards

The ATA card to be used in the CNC must comply with PCMCIA (Personal Computer Memory Card International Association) PC Card standard Release 2.1 and PCMCIA PC Card ATA Release 1.02 .

2-2 Card Shapes PCMCIA Type I and Type II
2-3 Card Operation Mode PC-ATA specification
2-4 Card Operating Voltage
ATA cards that can operate on 5 V (single voltage power source) and $5 \mathrm{~V} / 3.3 \mathrm{~V}$ (automatic switching) can be used in the CNC.
3. Flash ATA cards whose normal operation has been confirmed

The following table shows that the ATA Flash cards which are confirmed to be worked on the Series $0 i / 0 i$ Mate ${ }^{\text {(note }{ }^{1)} \text { by FANUC. }}$ (for June, 2003)
The marks on the table mean bellow.
Available: The card confirmed to be worked by FANUC
NG: FANUC does not recommend to use it because it might need much time to write data to the card.
-: $\quad$ No planning to test
(Blank): This will be evaluated in the future.
FANUC does not guarantee that any other cards except for the list work well.

## NOTE

The PSMCIA interface on the CNC display unit for with PC functions is not included.

Table F (a) ATA flash card list

| Vendor | Specification | Capacity | Purpose |  | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | For Data Input/Output | For Data Server |  |
| HITACHI | HB28D096A8H | 96MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | HB28D160A8H | 160MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | HB28B192A8H | 192MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | HB28B320A8H | 320MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | HB28B640A8H | 640MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | HB28B1000A8H | 1GB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |

## NOTE

1 If a card other than the above is used, the operation is not guaranteed.
2 The cards for 3.3 V cannot be used.
3 The cards for 5 and 3.3 V (automatic switching) can be used.

In the future, we will recommended compact flash cards because of their availability.
For those that we do not plan to evaluate, use the compact flash cards on the compact flash card list instead.

Table F (b) Compact flash card list

| Vendor | Specification | Capacity | Purpose |  | Remarks |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  | For Data Input/Output | For Data Server |  |
| SanDisk | SDCFB-64-801 | 64MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | Note 2 |
|  | SDCFB-128-801 | 128MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | SDCFB-256-801 | 256MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | SDCFB-384-801 | 384MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | SDCFB-512-801 | 512 MB | $\bigcirc$ | $\bigcirc$ |  |
|  | SDCFB-32-101 | 32 MB | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |
|  | SDCFB-64-101 | 64MB | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |
| HITACHI | HB288032C6 | 32MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | No production |
|  | HB288064C6 | 64MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | No production |
|  | HB28D032C8H | 32MB | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |
|  | HH28B064C8H | 64MB | $\bigcirc$ | - |  |
| I.O data | PCCF-32MS | 32MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | No production |
|  | PCCF-48MS | 48MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | No production |
|  | PCCF-64MS | 64MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | No production |
|  | PCCF-H32MS | 32MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | No production |
|  | PCCF-H48MS | 48MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | No production |
|  | PCCF-H64MS | 64 MB | $\bigcirc$ | - | No production |

## NOTE

1 The compact flash card adapters used for operation confirmation are as follows:
Adapter made by SanDisk: SDCF-31
Adapter made by I-O DATA: PCCF-ADP
2 The compact flash card adapter used for operation confirmation is as follows:
Adapter made by SanDisk: SDCF-31-03

## 4. Miscellaneous

- The flash ATA card uses a quick format. If your flash ATA card has not been formatted, do so using a personal computer.
- It is impossible to use ATA cards with the memory card access function of a C executor application.


## PROCEDURE FOR FIXING THE MEMORY CARD

Follow the procedure below to fix the memory card.

1. Inserting the memory card into the fixing bracket


Insert the memory card into the fixing bracket in the direction indicated by the arrow.


Fix the memory card to the fixing bracket.
2. Inserting the card into the PCMCIA port.


Loosen the screw of the fixing bracket and insert the memory card into the PCMCIA port with the claw of the fixing bracket raised.


Align the claw of the fixing bracket with the groove of the PCMCIA port and then push the bracket in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Tighten the screw of the bracket to fix the memory card.

Fix the card by tightening the screw.

## [Numbers]

20-pin Interface Connectors and Cables, 311
2A DO (Output Signal) Connection, 184
2A Output Connector Pin Allocation, 183
2A Output DO Signal Specifications, 185

## [A]

Action Against Noise, 22
Address Assignment by Ladder, 253
Analog Input Connector Pin Allocation, 186
Analog Input Signal Connections, 187
Analog Input Signal Specifications, 189
Analog Input Specifications, 190
Analog Spindle Interface, 76

## [B]

Batteries, 46
Battery for Absolute Pulse Coder Built into the Motor (6VDC), 51
Battery for Memory Backup (3VDC), 46
Battery for Separate Absolute Pulse Coders (6VDC), 50
Board-mounted Connectors, 312

## [C]

Cable Clamp and Shield Processing, 27
Cable Connectors, 313
Cable for Power Supply to Control Unit, 45, 108
Cable Length for Manual Pulse Generator, 193
Cabling Diagram, 35
Configuration, 1, 173
Configurations of Control Units, 2
Connecting DI/DO, 111
Connecting I/O Devices, 57
Connecting the FANUC Servo Unit $\beta$ Series with I/O Link, 251

Connecting the Ground Terminal of the Control Unit, 25

Connecting the High-speed Skip (HDI), 70
Connecting the Manual Pulse Generator, 125
Connection, 99, 252
Connection Cable (Supplied from Us), 326

Connection Diagram, 174, 259
Connection of Basic and Expansion Modules, 194
Connection of Battery for Separate Absolute Detector, 91
Connection of Connector Panel I/O Module, 173
Connection of Each Section, 155
Connection of FANUC I/O Link by Electric Cable, 104
Connection of I/O Link Slave Devices, 105
Connection of I/O Units for $0 i, 106$
Connection of MDI Unit, 53
Connection of One to Two Serial Spindles, 74
Connection of Operator's Panel I/O Module (for Matrix Input), 206
Connection of Operator's Panel I/O Module and Power Magnetics Cabinet I/O Module, 224
Connection of Power Supply, 83
Connection of Source Output Type Connection Unit, 241

Connection to CNC Peripherals, 52
Connection to FANUC I/O Link, 97
Connection to Machine Operator's Panel, 129
Connection to other Networks, 269
Connection to the High-speed Skip (HDI), 71
Connection to the Servo Amplifiers, 79
Connection to the Small Machine Operator's Panel, 154
Connection with Input/Output Devices, 56
Connections, 131
Connector (on the cable side) specifications, 141
Connector Layout of the Small Machine Operator's Panel, 167
Connector Locations, 93
Connector Locations of Main Panel B, 144
Connector Pin Arrangement, 110
Connector Pin Layout for Source Output Type Connection Unit, 247

Control Unit, 32
Control Unit Configuration and Component Names, 2
Cooling by Heat Exchanger, 18
Customization of the key sheet, 171

## [D]

Design and Installation Conditions of the Machine Tool Magnetic Cabinet, 16

Detachable key top, 150
DI (General-purpose Input Signal) Connection, 209, 228

DI (Input Signal) Connection, 178
DI (Matrix Input Signal) Connection, 211
DI Signal Connection (Rotary Switch Connection), 160

DI/DO Connector Pin Arrangement, 208, 227
DI/DO Connector Pin Assignment, 177
DI/DO Signal Specifications, 181
Dimensions of Source Output Type Connection Unit, 250

Distribution I/O Setting, 203
DNC2 Interface (RS-232-C), 268
DO (Output Signal) Connection, 180, 212, 232
Dustproof Measures for Cabinets and Pendant Boxes, 35

## [E]

Emergency Stop Signal, 254
Emergency stop signal connection, 135
Emergency stop switch, 156
Environment for Installation, 14
Environmental requirement, 145, 168
Environmental Requirements Outside the Control Unit, 14

External 24 VDC Power Supply and Circuit Configurations, 39

External Dimensions, 163
External Dimensions of Each Unit, 273
External View, 216, 234

## [F]

FANUC DNC2 Interface, 266
FANUC Handy File Connection, 69

## [G]

General-purpose DI connection, 136
General-purpose DI signal definition, 147
General-purpose DO signal, 138
General-purpose DO signal definition, 147
Ground, 24
[ H ]
Handling Precautions, 264
Hardware Overview, 7
Heat Output of Each Unit, 19
High-speed Serial Bus (HSSB), 257

## [I]

I/O Address, 142, 161
I/O Address Allocation, 163
I/O Link connection, 156
I/O link connection, 134
I/O Mapping, 144
I/O Signal Requirements and External Power Supply for DO, 121

Input Signal Requirements (Parallel Interface), 89
Input Signal Rules for the High-speed Skip (HDI), 72
Input Signal Specifications for Source Output Type Connection Unit, 242
Installation, 13, 94
Installation Environment, 261
Installation of the Control Unit, 32
Interface to the Servo Amplifiers, 80
[K]
Key Layout of Separate-type MDI, 53
Key Symbol Indication on Machine Operator's Panel, 148, 169
Keyboard of main panel, 142
Keyboard of the operator's panel, 161

## [L]

Layout of the key sheet, 165
Linear Scale Interface (Parallel Interface), 84
Liquid Crystal Display (LCD), 341

## [M]

Main panel B, B1 specification, 146
Maintenance Parts, 172
Manual Pulse Generator Connection, 192, 215, 234
Manual pulse generator connection, 139, 157
Maximum Number of Units that can be Connected, 253

Meaning of key symbols, 148, 169
Measures Against Surges due to Lightning, 30
Memory Card Interface, 342
Module Installation, 195
Module Specifications, 175
[ N ]
Noise Suppressor, 26
Notes on Installing a Separate Detector Interface Unit, 95

## [0]

Operator's panel specification, 168
Optical Fiber Cable, 329
Order specification, 145, 168
Outline drawing and panel-cut drawing of the small machine operator's panel, 164
Output Signal Specifications for Source Output Type Connection Unit, 243
Overall Connection Diagram, 154, 206, 224
Override signals, 143, 162

## [P]

Personal Computer Specification, 260
Pin assignment, 131
Position Coder Interface, 77
Power Connection, 207, 226
Power connection, 155
Power ON/OFF control signal connection, 135
Power Supply Capacities of CNC-related Units, 15
Power Supply Capacity, 15
Power Supply Connection, 36
Power supply connection, 133
Power Supply for the Control Unit, 38
Power Supply Precautions, 104
Power supply specification, 146, 169
Procedure for Fixing the Memory Card, 345
Procedure for Installing Personal Computer Interface Boards, 262

Procedure for Turning Off the Power, 44
Procedure for turning on the power, 43

## [R]

Recommended Cables, 265
Recommended Connectors, Applicable Housings, and Cables, 315
RS-232-C Interface Specification, 60
RS-232-C Serial Port, 58
[S]
Separate Detector Interface, 81
Separate Detector Interface Unit Specification, 83
Separate Type Pulse Coder Interface (Parallel Interface), 85

Separating Signal Lines, 22
Serial Spindle, 74
Servo Interface, 78
Specification of Personal Computer in Case that the Interface Board of ISA Type are Used, 260

Specification of Personal Computer in Case that the Interface Board of PCI Type are Used, 260
Specifications, 145, 168, 217, 235
Spindle Connection, 73
Sub panel A, B1 specification, 146

## [T]

Temperature Rise within the Cabinet, 18
Thermal Design of Operator's Panel, 20
Thermal Design of the Cabinet, 18
Total Connection Diagram, 130
Total Connection Diagrams, 9
Turning On and Off the Power to the Control Unit, 38
[W]
When a pendant-type manual pulse generator, 140
Revision Record
FANUC Series 0i-MODEL C FANUC Series 0i Mate-MODEL CONNECTION MANUAL (HARDWARE) (B-64113EN)

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 01 | May, 2004 | $\qquad$ |  |  |  |
| Edition | Date | Contents | Edition | Date | Contents |

- No part of this manual may be reproduced in any form.
- All specifications and designs are subject to change without notice.


[^0]:    Read this manual carefully, and store it in a safe place.

